

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

v92

2 Peter

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/ or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: “The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn”. You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes **6**
2 Peter 6
2 Peter Introduction 6
2 Peter 1 8
2 Peter 2 46
2 Peter 3 95
Appendix: Translation Academy **130**
First, Second or Third Person 130
Abstract Nouns 131
Active or Passive 133
Statements — Other Uses 135
Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding 137
Double Negatives 139
Doublet 141
Ellipsis 143
Euphemism 145
Exclamations 146
Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ 148
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information 149
When Masculine Words Include Women 152
Generic Noun Phrases 153
Hendiadys 155
Hyperbole 157
Idiom 160
Information Structure 161
Metaphor 163
Metonymy 168
Nominal Adjectives 170
Parallelism 171
Personification 173
Possession 175
Pronouns 178
Reflexive Pronouns 179
Rhetorical Question 181
Simile 184
Synecdoche 186
Forms of You 187
Connect — Factual Conditions 188
Connect — Hypothetical Conditions 190
Connect — Contrast Relationship 191
Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship 193
Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship 195
Connecting Words and Phrases 197
Translating Son and Father 200
Blessings 201
How to Translate Names 203
Textual Variants 206
Translate Unknowns 208
Background Information 210
Pronouns — When to Use Them 213
Proverbs 215
Quotations and Quote Margins 217
Appendix: Translation Words **219**
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress 219
amen, truly 220
angel, archangel 221
apostle, apostleship 222
authority 223
beloved 224
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous 225
bind, bond, bound 226
call, called, call out, called out 227
Christ, Messiah 227
condemn, condemned, condemnation 228
curse, cursed, cursing 229
day of the Lord, day of Yahweh 230

divine 231
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect 232
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever 233
faith 234
glory, glorious, glorify 235
God 237
godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness 238
God the Father, heavenly Father, Father 239
good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness 240
grace, gracious 242
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly 243
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred 244
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit 245
honor 246
iniquity 247
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus 248
judge, judgment 249
kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven 250
last day, last days, latter days 252
lord, Lord, master, sir 253
love, beloved 254
majesty 256
perish 256
promise, promised 257
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess 258
repent, repentance 260
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness 261
save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue 263
Savior, savior 264
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning 265
Son of God, the Son 267
soul, self 268
transgress, transgression 269
wise, wisdom 269
word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture 270
world, worldly 272
Balaam 273
Gomorrah 273
Lot 274
Noah 274
Paul, Saul 275
Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas 276
Sodom 277
age, era, time 278
arrogant, presumptuous 278
day 279
year 280
captive, captivate, captivity, catch 280
corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved 281
create, created, creation, creator 282
creature, creation 283
deceive, lie, deception, illusion 283
defile, defiled, desecrate 284
delight 285
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered 286
donkey, mule 287
earth, land 287
endure, endurance 288
enslave, slave, bondservant, bondage, bound, bond, bonds, young man, young men, young woman, young women 289
envy, covet, jealous, jealousy 290
false prophet 291
feast, feasting 291
flood 292
foreknew, foreknowledge 293
fountain, source, spring 294
free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty 294
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful 295
interpret, interpretation, interpreter 296
know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish 297
lamp 298

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness 299
lust, lustful, passion, desire 300
mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded 301
mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock 302
multiply, multiplied, multiplication 303
patient, patience, impatient 303
peace, peaceful, peacemaker 304
pig, pork, swine 305
proverb 305
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished 306
rebuke, reprove 307
receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance 307
self-control, self-controlled 308
servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women 309
slander, slanderer, revile, insult 310
stumble, reeling 311
suffer, suffering 312
torment, tormented, tormentor 313
tremble, shake, shaken, quake 313
trial, proving 314
vain, vanity 314

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Peter

2 Peter Introduction

Introduction to 2 Peter

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Peter

1. Introduction (1:1–2)
2. Reminder to live godly lives because God has enabled us to do so (1:3–15)
3. Reminder of the veracity of apostolic teaching (1:16–21)
4. Prediction of false teachers (2:1–3)
5. Examples of divine judgment (2:4–10a)
6. Description and denunciation of false teachers (2:10b–22)
7. Reminder that Jesus will return at the right time (3:1–13)
8. Concluding exhortation to live godly lives (3:14–17)

Who wrote the book of 2 Peter?

The author identified himself as Simon Peter. Simon Peter was an apostle. He also wrote the book of 1 Peter. Peter probably wrote this letter while in a prison in Rome, just before he died. Peter called this letter his second letter, so we can date it after 1 Peter. He addressed the letter to the same audience as his first letter. The audience probably was Christians scattered throughout Asia Minor.

What is the book of 2 Peter about?

Peter wrote this letter to encourage believers to live good lives. He warned them about false teachers who were saying Jesus was taking too long to return. He told them that Jesus was not slow in returning. Instead, God was giving people time to repent so that they would be saved.

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may choose to call this book by its traditional title, “2 Peter” or “Second Peter.” Or they may choose a clearer title, such as “The Second Letter from Peter” or “The Second Letter Peter Wrote.” (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

Who were the people Peter spoke against?

It is possible that the people Peter spoke against were those who would become known as Gnostics. These teachers distorted the teachings of Scripture for their own gain. They lived in immoral ways and taught others to do the same.

What does it mean that God inspired Scripture?

The doctrine of Scripture is a very important one. 2 Peter helps readers to understand that while each writer of Scripture had his own distinct way of writing, God is the true author of Scripture (1:20–21).

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Singular and plural "you"

In this book, the word "I" refers to Peter. Also, the word "you" is always plural and refers to Peter's audience. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'; and Forms of You)

What are the major issues in the text of the book of 2 Peter?

For the following verses, there are differences between some of the ancient manuscripts. The ULT text follows the reading that most scholars consider to be original and puts the other reading in a footnote. If a translation of the Bible exists in the language of wider communication in the region, translators may want to consider using the reading found in that version. If not, translators are advised to follow the reading in the ULT.

- "to be kept in chains of lower darkness until the judgment" (2:4). Some ancient manuscripts have, "to be kept in pits of lower darkness until the judgment."
- "They enjoy their deceitful actions while they are feasting with you" (2:13). Some manuscripts have, "They enjoy their actions while they are feasting with you in love feasts."
- "Bosor" (2:15). A few other manuscripts read, "Beor."
- "The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be revealed" (3:10). Other manuscripts have, "The elements will be burned with fire, and the earth and the deeds in it will be burned up."

(See: Textual Variants)

2 Peter 1

2 Peter 1 Introduction

2 Peter 1 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Introduction (1:1–2)
2. Reminder to live good lives, because God has enabled us to do so (1:3–15)
3. Reminder of the veracity of apostolic teaching (1:16–21)

Peter begins this letter in 1:1–2 by giving his name, identifying the people to whom he is writing, and offering a greeting. That was the way people typically began letters at this time.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Knowledge of God

Having experiential knowledge of God means to belong to him or to have a relationship with him. Here, “knowledge” is more than just mentally knowing about God. It is the knowledge of personal relationship in which God saves a person and gives him grace and peace. (See: know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish)

Living godly lives

Peter teaches that God has given believers all that they need for living godly lives. Therefore, believers should do everything they can to obey God more and more. If believers continue to do this, then they will be effective and productive through their relationship with Jesus. However, if believers do not continue living godly lives, then it is as though they have forgotten what God did through Christ to save them. (See: godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness; and save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue)

Translation Issues in This Chapter

The truth of Scripture

Peter teaches that the prophecies in Scripture were not made up by men. The Holy Spirit revealed God’s message to the men who spoke them or wrote them down. Also, Peter and the other apostles did not make up the stories they told people about Jesus. They witnessed what Jesus did and heard God call Jesus his son.

2 Peter 1:1

ULT	UST
Simon Peter, a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ, to the ones having received a faith equal in value with us, by the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ:	*I, Simon Peter, serve Jesus the Messiah, and I am an apostle whom he appointed. I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe in the Messiah just like he caused us apostles to believe in the Messiah. Jesus has done this by his righteous acts. Jesus the Messiah is our God, and he is the one who saves us.*

ULT **Simon Peter**
UST I, Simon Peter

In this culture, letter writers would give their own names first, and they would refer to themselves in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the first person. If your language has a particular way of introducing the author of a letter, you could also use that. Alternate translation: [I, Simon Peter, am writing this letter] or [From Simon Peter]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **Simon Peter**
UST I, Simon Peter

Simon Peter is the name of a man, a disciple of Jesus. See the information about him in Part 1 of the Introduction to 2 Peter.

Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **a servant and an apostle of Jesus Christ**
UST serve Jesus the Messiah, and I am an apostle whom he appointed

This phrase gives further information about Simon Peter. He describes himself as being both a **servant of Jesus Christ** and one given the position and authority of being Christ's **apostle**.

Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **the ones having received**
UST I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe {in the Messiah} just like he caused us {apostles} to believe in the Messiah

In this culture, after giving their own names, letter writers would then say to whom they were writing, naming those people in the third person. If that would be confusing in your language, you could use the second person. Alternate translation: [to you who have received]

Support Reference: First, Second or Third Person

ULT **to the ones having received a faith equal in value with us**
UST I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe {in the Messiah} just like he caused us {apostles} to believe in the Messiah

That these people have **received a faith** implies that God has given that faith to them. Alternate translation: [to those to whom God has given a faith equal in value with us]

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to the ones having received a faith equal in value**
UST I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe {in the Messiah} just like he caused us {apostles} to believe in the Messiah

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **faith** with a verb, such as "trust" or "believe." Alternate translation: [to those whom God has made to trust] or [to those whom God has made to believe]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **with us**
UST I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe {in the Messiah} just like he caused us {apostles} to believe in the Messiah

Here, the word **us** refers to Peter and the other apostles, but not to those to whom he is writing. Alternate translation: [as we apostles have received]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **by the righteousness**
UST Jesus has done this by his righteous acts

The word **by** indicates the means through which they received the faith. Alternate translation: [by means of the righteousness]

ULT **the righteousness of our God and Savior**
UST Jesus has done this by his righteous acts … is our God, and he is the one who saves us

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **righteousness** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective such as "righteous" or "right." Alternate translation: [the righteous acts of our God and Savior] or [the right way of our God and Savior]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Simon Peter	Simon Peter
servant	serve
apostle	apostle
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
faith	I am writing this letter to you whom God has caused to believe {in the Messiah} just like he caused us {apostles} to believe in the Messiah
righteousness	righteous
God	God
Savior	he is the one who saves us
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

2 Peter 1:2

ULT	UST
May grace and peace be multiplied to you in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord.	*I pray that God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful because you know God and Jesus, who is our Lord.*

ULT **May grace and peace be multiplied to you**
UST I pray that God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful

In this culture, letter writers would offer a good wish for the recipient before introducing the main business of the letter. Use a form in your language that makes it clear that this is a greeting and blessing. Alternate translation: [May God increase his kind acts to you and make you more peaceful]
Support Reference: Blessings

ULT **May grace and peace be multiplied**
UST I pray that God will increase his kind acts … and make … more peaceful

God is the one who will give **grace** and **peace** to believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could make that information explicit. Alternate translation: [May God increase his grace and peace]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **May grace and peace be multiplied to you**
UST I pray that God will increase his kind acts toward you and make you more peaceful

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **grace** and **peace** by stating the ideas behind them with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: [May God multiply his kind acts to you and give you a more peaceful spirit]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **May grace and peace be multiplied**
UST I pray that God will increase his kind acts … and make … more peaceful

Peter speaks of **grace and peace** as if they were objects that could increase in size or number. If this is confusing in your language, you can use a different metaphor that means that these things will increase, or use plain language. Alternate translation: [May God increase his grace and peace]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to you**
UST toward you … you

Here the pronoun **you** is plural, since Peter is writing to believers in Jesus as a group. Generally, throughout the letter the pronouns “you” and “your” are plural for this same reason.
Support Reference: Forms of You

> ULT **in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord**
> UST because you know God and Jesus, {who is} our Lord

If you would not use an abstract noun here, you could translate **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [because you know God and Jesus our Lord]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **in the knowledge of God and of Jesus our Lord**
> UST because you know God and Jesus, {who is} our Lord

This could mean: (1) “because of knowing God and Jesus our Lord” or (2) “through knowing God and Jesus our Lord.”

> ULT **our Lord**
> UST our Lord

Here, **our Lord** means “the person who is lord over us” or “the person who rules over us.”
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grace	his kind acts
peace	peaceful
multiplied	I pray that God will increase … make … more
knowledge	know
God	God
Jesus	Jesus
Lord	Lord

2 Peter 1:3

ULT	UST
As his divine power has given to us all the things for life and godliness through the knowledge of the one having called us through his glory and excellence,	*God has given us everything that we need in order to live a life that honors him. He does this by his power as God. He does this by what we know about him. God is the one who chose us to be his people by his glorious and excellent character.*

ULT **As his divine power has given to us**
UST God has given us everything … He does this by his power as God

Here, **As** indicates that this verse provides the reason for the expected result, which is Peter's command in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: [Since his divine power has given to us]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to us**
UST us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and all believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **his divine power**
UST He does this by his power as God

The pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: [God's divine power]; or (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: [Jesus, by his power as God]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **his divine power**
UST He does this by his power as God

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **power** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [God, because he can do anything,]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **his divine power has given**
UST God has given … He does this by his power as God

Peter is speaking of God's **divine power** as if it were a living thing that could give something to people. God is the one who is giving, and he uses his **divine power** to do so. Alternate translation: [God has used his divine power to give]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **for life and godliness**
UST in order to live a life that honors him

Here, the word **for** indicates the purpose for which God has given all these things to believers. Alternate translation: [for the purpose of life and godliness]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **for life and godliness**
UST in order to live a life that honors him

Here, **godliness** describes the word **life**. Alternate translation: [for a godly life]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **godliness**
UST live a life that honors him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **godliness** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [acting honorably toward God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **through the knowledge**
UST He does this by what we know about him

The word **through** here indicates the means by which God has given us all things for life and godliness. Alternate translation: [by means of the knowledge]

ULT **through the knowledge of the one having called us**
UST He does this by what we know about him. God is the one who chose us to be his people

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [through our knowing the one who called us]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the one having called us**
UST God is the one who chose us to be his people

This phrase could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: [of God, who called us]; or (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: [of Jesus, who called us]

ULT **us**
UST us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and his audience, fellow believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **through his glory and excellence**
UST by his glorious and excellent character

Here, **through** indicates the means by which God called us. Alternate translation: [by means of his glory and excellence]

ULT **through his glory and excellence**
UST by his glorious and excellent character

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **glory** and **excellence** by stating the ideas behind them with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [because he is so great and so good]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
divine	He does this by … power as God
godliness	live a life that honors him
knowledge	know
called	God is the one who chose … to be his people
glory	glorious

2 Peter 1:4

ULT	UST
through which he has given to us the precious and great promises so that through them you might be sharers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption in the world by lust,	*By his glorious and excellent character, God has promised that he will do priceless and great things for us. He has done this so that by believing in what he has promised, you will be able to act like God, and you will no longer suffer the moral corruption that is in the world through the desire to do sinful things.*

ULT **through which**
UST By his glorious and excellent character

Here, **through** indicates the means by which God gave his promises. Alternate translation: [by means of which]

ULT **through which**
UST By his glorious and excellent character

Here, **which** refers back to words from the previous verse. It could refer to: (1) "his glory and excellence." Alternate translation: [through his glory and excellence]; or (2) "all the things for life and godliness." Alternate translation: [by giving us all of these things]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to us**
UST God has promised that he will do priceless and great things for us

Here, **us** refers to Peter and his audience, fellow believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **he has given**
UST God has promised that he will do priceless and great things for us

The pronoun **he** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: [God has given]; or (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: [Jesus has given]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **he has given to us the precious and great promises**
UST God has promised that he will do priceless and great things for us

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **promises** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [he has promised to us precious and great things]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **so that through them you might be sharers of the divine nature**
UST He has done this so that by {believing in} what he has promised, you will be able to act like God

This is a purpose clause. Peter is stating the purpose for which God has given to us precious and great promises. In your translation, follow the conventions of your language for purpose clauses. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): [in order that through them you might be sharers of the divine nature]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **through them**
UST by {believing in} what he has promised

The word **through** here indicates the means by which you might be sharers of the divine nature. Alternate translation: [by means of them]

ULT **through them**
UST by {believing in} what he has promised

Here the pronoun **them** refers back to the precious and great promises of the previous phrase. Alternate translation: [through these promises]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **of the divine nature**
UST you will be able to act like God

The abstract noun **nature** refers to the inherent features of something or what it is like. Alternate translation: [of what God is like]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **having escaped the corruption**
UST you will be able to act like God, {and} you will no longer suffer the moral corruption that is in the world through the desire to do sinful things

Peter speaks of people not suffering from the **corruption** that wicked desires cause as if they had **escaped** from that corruption. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this phrase plainly. Alternate translation: [no longer being corrupted]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the world**
UST and you will no longer suffer the moral corruption that is in the world through the desire to do sinful things

Here, **the world** could mean: (1) the place where we all live, where we are surrounded by sinful people and temptations to sin. Alternate translation: [that is all around us]; or (2) the system of values that people share who do not honor God. Alternate translation: [of the world's ungodly value system]
Support Reference: Metonymy

> ULT **by lust**
> UST and you will no longer suffer the moral corruption that is in the world through the desire to do sinful things

Here, **by** indicates the means by which the world became corrupt. It does not indicate the means by which Peter's addressees escaped corruption. Alternate translation: [by means of lust]

> ULT **corruption**
> UST and you will no longer suffer the moral corruption that is in the world through the desire to do sinful things

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **corruption** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [things that corrupt you]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
promises	promised
divine	you will be able to act like God
world	world
lust	desire
corruption	corruption

2 Peter 1:5

ULT	UST
and now for this same reason, applying all diligence, supply in your faith, goodness; and in goodness, knowledge;	*Because God has done all that, do your best to not only believe in the Messiah, but also to do good things. And make sure that you not only do good things, but that you also learn more about God.*

ULT **and now {for} this same reason**
UST Because God has done all that

The phrase **{for} this same {reason}** refers to what Peter has just said in the previous verses. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: [and now because of these things that God has done]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **applying all diligence**
UST do your best to

The phrase **applying all diligence** indicates the means by which one is to do the action of supplying that follows. Alternate translation: [by means of applying all diligence]

ULT **applying all diligence**
UST do your best to

Here, **applying all diligence** is an idiom that means doing one's best or making the best effort. Alternate translation: [making every effort]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **supply in your faith**
UST not only believe in the Messiah

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **faith** with a verb such as "trust" or "believe." Alternate translation: [as you trust in Jesus, add]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your**
UST believe in the Messiah

The pronoun **your** is plural here, since Peter is writing to believers in Jesus as a group. Generally, throughout the letter the pronouns "you" and "your" are plural for this same reason.
Support Reference: Forms of You

ULT **goodness … goodness**
UST but also to do good things. {And make sure that you not only} do good things

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **goodness** with an adjective phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: [doing what is good … doing what is good]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and in goodness, knowledge**

UST And make sure that you not only do good things, {but that you also} learn more about God

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in your goodness, knowledge]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **knowledge**

UST but that you also learn more about God

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [knowing more about God]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
faith	believe in the Messiah
knowledge	but that you also learn more about God

2 Peter 1:6

ULT	UST
and in knowledge, self-control; and in self-control, endurance; and in endurance, godliness;	*And make sure that you do not only learn more about God, but that you also control yourself in what you do and say. And make sure that you do not only control yourself in what you do and say, but that you also remain faithful to God in hardship. And make sure that you do not only remain faithful to God in hardship, but that you also honor him.*

ULT **and in knowledge, self-control**

UST And make sure that you do not only learn more about God, {but that you also} control yourself in what you do and say

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in knowledge, self-control]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **knowledge**

UST And make sure that you do not only learn more about God

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [knowing more about God]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **self-control … self-control**

UST but that you also control yourself {in what you do and say}. {And make sure that you do not only} control yourself in what you do and say

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **self-control** with a verbal phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: [controlling yourself … controlling yourself]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and in self-control, endurance**

UST And make sure that you do not only control yourself {in what you do and say}, {but that you also} remain faithful to God in hardship

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in self-control, endurance]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **endurance … endurance**
UST but that you also remain faithful to God in hardship. {And make sure that you do not only} remain faithful to God in hardship

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **endurance** with a verbal phrase in both occurrences in this verse. Alternate translation: [enduring hardship … enduring hardship]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and in endurance, godliness**
UST And make sure that you do not only remain faithful to God in hardship, {but that you also} honor him

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in endurance, godliness]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **godliness**
UST but that you also honor him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **godliness** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [acting honorably toward God]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knowledge	And make sure that you do not only learn more about God
self-control	but that you also control yourself in what you do and say
self-control	And make sure that you do not only control yourself in what you do and say
endurance	but that you also remain faithful to God in hardship
endurance	And make sure that you do not only remain faithful to God in hardship
godliness	but that you also honor him

2 Peter 1:7

ULT	UST
and in godliness, brotherly affection; and in brotherly affection, love.	*And make sure that you do not only honor God, but that you also show affection to each other as family members. And make sure that you do not only show affection to each other as family members, but that you also love others.*

ULT **and in godliness, brotherly affection**
UST And make sure that you do not only honor God, {but that you also} show affection to each other as family members

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in godliness, brotherly affection]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **brotherly affection … brotherly affection**
UST but that you also show affection to each other as family members. {And make sure that you do not only} show affection to each other as family members

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **brotherly affection** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [being concerned for your brothers and sisters … being concerned for your brothers and sisters]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and in brotherly affection, love**
UST And make sure that you do not only show affection to each other as family members, {but that you also} love others

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from earlier in the sentence. Alternate translation: [and supply in brotherly affection, love]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **love**
UST but that you also love others

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **love** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [loving others]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
godliness	And make sure that you do not only honor God
brotherly affection	but that you also show affection to each other as family members
brotherly affection	And make sure that you do not only show affection to each other as family members
love	love

2 Peter 1:8

ULT	UST
For these things existing and increasing in you cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ.	*Do these things, because if you do all these things more and more, then they will make you productive with respect to your knowing our Lord Jesus the Messiah.*

ULT **For these things existing and increasing in you**
UST Do these things, because if you do all these things more and more

The word **For** here indicates that Peter is giving a reason why his audience should obey the command given in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: [Because these things existing and increasing in you]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **For these things existing and increasing in you cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful**
UST Do these things, because if you do all these things more and more, then they will make you productive … your

Peter is describing a conditional situation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express it that way. Alternate translation: [For if these things are existing and increasing in you, then they will cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **these things**
UST Do these things, because if … all these things

Here, **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful**
UST then they will make you productive … your

Peter speaks of a person who does not possess these qualities as if he were a field that will not produce a crop. If that is confusing in your language, you could use a different metaphor with that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [cause you to be neither unproductive nor useless]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **cause you to be neither barren nor unfruitful**
UST then they will make you productive … your

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in positive terms. Alternate translation: [cause you to produce and bear fruit]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **neither barren nor unfruitful**
UST then they will make you productive … your

The words **barren** and **unfruitful** mean basically the same thing. In combination with the negatives **neither** and **nor**, they are used together to emphasize that this person will not be unproductive but will experience great benefits from knowing Jesus. If it is confusing in your language to use two words together that mean the same thing, you could just use one word with that meaning. Alternate translation: [not unproductive]

Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ**
UST with respect to … knowing our Lord Jesus the Messiah

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** using a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [in your knowing our Lord Jesus Christ]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
increasing	do … more and more
unfruitful	then they will make you productive … your
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
knowledge	knowing

2 Peter 1:9

ULT	UST
For he in whom these things are not present is blind, nearsighted, having received forgetfulness of the cleansing of his past sins.	*Do these things, because a person who does not do these things is not aware that these things are important. This person is like a blind person who cannot see what is around him, or like a nearsighted person who can only see things that are close to him. This person has even forgotten that God has forgiven him for the sinful things he did in the past.*

ULT **For**

UST Do these things, because a person who does not do these things is not aware that these things are important

For indicates that Peter is giving another reason why his audience should obey the command given in 1:5–7. Peter gave a positive reason in 1:8 and gives a negative reason here. Alternate translation: [Because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **he in whom these things are not present is blind**

UST Do these things, because a person who does not do these things {is not aware that these things are important.} {This person is like} a blind person who cannot see what is around him

Here, **he** does not refer to a specific person, but to any person who does not have these things. Alternate translation: [anyone who does not have these things]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

ULT **these things**

UST Do these things, because a person who does not do these things is not aware that these things are important

The phrase **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.

Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **he … is blind, nearsighted**

UST This person is like a blind person {who cannot see what is around him,} {or like} a nearsighted person who can only see things that are close to him

In this metaphor, Peter speaks of a person who does not possess these qualities as if the person were **blind** or **nearsighted**. He means this in a spiritual sense, that this person cannot see what is spiritually important. If that is confusing in your language, you could use a different metaphor with that meaning or state the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [he … is like a blind or shortsighted person who cannot see their importance]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **he … is blind, nearsighted**

UST This person is like a blind person {who cannot see what is around him,} {or like} a nearsighted person who can only see things that are close to him

Although the words **blind** and **nearsighted** have similar meanings, **blind** is more extreme than **nearsighted**, and a person cannot be both at the same time. If it is confusing in your language to describe someone using both of these words in this way, you could use a word like "or" between them or show how they might work together. Alternate translation: [he … is blind or nearsighted] or [he … is blindly nearsighted] or [he … is so nearsighted that he is blind to what is spiritually important]

Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **having received forgetfulness of the cleansing**

UST This person has even forgotten that God has forgiven him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **forgetfulness** in this phrase with a verb. Alternate translation: [having forgotten the cleansing]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the cleansing of his past sins**

UST that God has forgiven him for the sinful things {he did} in the past

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **cleansing** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [that God has cleansed him from his old sins]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the cleansing of his past sins**

UST that God has forgiven him for the sinful things {he did} in the past

Peter is speaking of forgiving sin as if sin were something that made people dirty and thus required **cleansing** from God. Alternate translation: [of the forgiving of his past sins]

Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
received	This person has even forgotten
sins	sinful

2 Peter 1:10

ULT	UST
Therefore, brothers, be even more diligent to make your calling and election sure, for doing these things, you will certainly not ever stumble.	*Consequently, you fellow believers, make even more effort to make sure that God has chosen you to be his people. If you do these things I have just told you about, then you will absolutely never become separated from God.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST Consequently

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has just said. He is referring specifically to the two reasons for obedience given in 1:8–9. Alternate translation: [Because of these reasons]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **brothers**
UST you fellow believers, make even more effort

Peter is using the term **brothers** as a way to directly address his fellow believers in Jesus. See the UST.
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **brothers**
UST you fellow believers, make even more effort

Peter is using the term **brothers** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Be sure that this is clear in your translation so that your readers do not get the impression that Peter is addressing only men. If you use a word such as "believers" to translate the metaphor **brothers**, you may need to use both the masculine and the feminine forms of that word in your language. If you retain the metaphor, you could state "my brothers and sisters."
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **to make your calling and election sure**
UST to make sure that God has chosen you to be his people

The words **calling** and **election** share similar meanings and both refer to God choosing believers to belong to him. Peter uses them together to emphasize this idea. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use just one word and provide the emphasis in another way. Alternate translation: [make sure that God has really chosen you to belong to him]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **for doing these things**
UST If you do these things I have just told you about

Here, **these things** refers back to the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for doing these things, you will certainly not ever stumble**
UST If you do these things I have just told you about, then you will absolutely never become separated from God

Peter is describing a conditional situation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express it that way. Alternate translation: [For if you do these things, then you will certainly not ever stumble]
Support Reference: Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

ULT **you will certainly not ever stumble**
UST then you will absolutely never become separated from God

The combination of the words **certainly not ever** here expresses strong emphatic negation. Alternate translation: [you will most certainly never stumble]

ULT **you will certainly not ever stumble**
UST then you will absolutely never become separated from God

Here, **stumble** could mean: (1) abandoning faith in Christ. Alternate translation: [you will certainly not abandon faith in Christ]; or (2) committing sin. Alternate translation: [you will certainly not practice sinful behavior]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
calling	God has chosen … to be his people
election	chosen
stumble	then you will absolutely never become separated from God

2 Peter 1:11

ULT	UST
For in this way will be richly provided to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ.	*This is true because, by your doing thus, God will wholeheartedly allow you to enter into the place where our Lord and Savior Jesus the Messiah will rule his people forever.*

ULT **For**
UST This is true because

For indicates that Peter is giving a reason why his readers should want to obey the commands given in 1:5–7 and 1:10.
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **in this way**
UST by your doing thus

Here, **in this way** refers back to the way of living that includes the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will be richly provided to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom**
UST God will wholeheartedly allow you to enter into the place where … will rule {his people} forever

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form.
Alternate translation: [God will richly provide to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **into the eternal kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ**
UST into the place where our Lord and Savior Jesus the Messiah will rule {his people} forever

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **kingdom** with a verbal phrase, such as "where our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ rules."
Alternate translation: [into the eternal place where our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ rules]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
eternal	forever
Lord	Lord
kingdom of … Lord	the place where … Lord … will rule {his people} forever
Savior	Savior
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

2 Peter 1:12

ULT	UST
Therefore, I will always remind you about these things, although you have known them and have been established in the present truth.	*Consequently, because these things are so important, I am always prepared to keep on reminding you about these things. I will remind you even though you already know them and are firmly convinced of the true teaching that you now have.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST Consequently, because these things are so important

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce the purpose of his letter. In order to encourage his readers to do everything he has said in 1:5–10, and especially because of the promise in 1:11, he wants to keep reminding them about these things. Use a natural form in your language to show that this introduces a result or purpose for saying what came before. Alternate translation: [Because these things are very important]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **these things**
UST these things

Here, **these things** refers back to what Peter has stated in the previous verses, specifically to faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **have been established in**
UST are firmly convinced of the true teaching that you now have

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: [you learned well]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **have been established in the present truth**
UST are firmly convinced of the true teaching that you now have

Here, **established** is used to refer to one being firmly committed to something. Alternate translation: [you strongly believe the truth that you now have]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in the present truth**
UST of the true teaching that you now have

Here, **in** has the meaning of "in reference to" or "with regard to." Alternate translation: [in reference to the present truth]

> ULT **in the present truth**
> UST of the true teaching that you now have

Here, **present** is used as if **truth** were an object that could be there with Peter's audience. Here it does not refer to present time. Alternate translation: [in the truth that you have] or [in the truth that is with you]

Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **in the present truth**
> UST of the true teaching that you now have

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **truth** with an adjective, such as "true." Alternate translation: [in these true teachings]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	know

2 Peter 1:13

ULT	UST
But I think it is right, as long as I am in this tent, to arouse you in remembrance,	*Nevertheless, I consider it to be right for me to keep reminding you about these things as long as I am alive.*

ULT **But**
UST Nevertheless

But could mean: (1) Peter is contrasting what he just said in the previous verse with what he is about to say. His audience already knows the truth, but he wants to remind them again. Alternate translation, as in the UST: [Nevertheless.]; or (2) Peter is connecting this statement with what he said at the beginning of the previous verse. Peter is always ready to remind them of the truth, and he thinks it is correct to do so. Alternate translation: [And]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **as long as I am in this tent**
UST as long as I am alive

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a **tent** that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this directly. Alternate translation: [as long as I am in this body] or [as long as I live]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to arouse you in remembrance**
UST to keep reminding you about these things

Peter uses **arouse** to refer to causing his readers to think about these things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this usage by translating this plainly. Alternate translation: [to remind you of these things so that you will think about them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **to arouse you in remembrance**
UST to keep reminding you about these things

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with the verb “remind.” Alternate translation: [to remind you]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
it is right	I … to be right

2 Peter 1:14

ULT	UST
knowing that the putting off of my tent is imminent, just as also our Lord Jesus Christ revealed this to me.	*I want to remind you of these things, because I know that I shall die soon. I shall die just like our Lord Jesus the Messiah has made clear to me previously.*

ULT **knowing**
UST I want to remind you of these things, because I know

In this clause Peter is giving a reason why he will always remind his audience of doctrinal truths in this letter, specifically faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love, which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: [This is because I know]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **the putting off of my tent is imminent**
UST I shall die soon

Peter speaks of his body as if it were a **tent** that he is wearing and will take off. Being in his body represents being alive, and taking it off represents dying. Alternate translation: [I will soon take off this body]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the putting off of my tent is imminent**
UST I shall die soon

Putting off his **tent** is a nice way to refer to dying. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this directly. Alternate translation: [I will die soon]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **just as also our Lord Jesus Christ revealed this to me**
UST I shall die just like our Lord Jesus the Messiah has made clear to me previously

Suggested footnote: “Peter may be referring here to what Jesus told him, as recorded in John 21:18–19.”

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knowing	know
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

2 Peter 1:15

ULT	UST
Likewise, I will be diligent to cause you to always have the remembrance of these things after my departure.	*In addition, I will make every effort by writing these things down to cause you to keep on remembering these things after I have died.*

ULT **Likewise**
UST In addition

Likewise here could mean that: (1) this statement is in addition to what Peter just said in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Moreover]; or (2) this statement is contrasting what he just said in the previous verse with what he is about to say. Alternate translation: [But]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **to cause you to always have the remembrance of these things**
UST these things … to cause you to keep on remembering these things

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with the verb "remind." Alternate translation: [to remind you of these things]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of these things**
UST these things … these things

Here, **these things** refers to what Peter has said in the previous verses, specifically the faith, goodness, knowledge, self-control, endurance, godliness, brotherly affection, and love which Peter mentioned in 1:5–7.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **after my departure**
UST after I have died

Peter uses the word **departure** as a nice way to speak of his death. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a more common euphemism in your language, or state it directly. Alternate translation: [after my passing] or [after I die]
Support Reference: Euphemism

2 Peter 1:16

ULT	UST
For we did not make known to you the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ by having followed cleverly invented myths, but by having become eyewitnesses of the majesty of that one.	*I will do this because, when we apostles told you that our Lord Jesus the Messiah is coming back in power some day, we were not basing what we told you on stories that we had cleverly made up. On the contrary, we told you what we saw with our own eyes, the divinely majestic Jesus.*

ULT **For**
UST I will do this because

For indicates that in 1:16–21 Peter explains to the believers why they should remember "these things," which were mentioned in 1:5–7. Alternate translation: [This is because]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **we did not make known**
UST when we apostles told … that … not

Here, **we** refers to Peter and the other apostles. It does not refer to his readers. Alternate translation: [we apostles did not follow]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the power and coming**
UST Lord … is coming back in power some day

The words **power** and **coming** work together to refer to the same thing; they may be translated as a single phrase. Alternate translation: [the powerful coming]
Support Reference: Hendiadys

ULT **the power and coming of our Lord Jesus Christ**
UST our Lord Jesus the Messiah is coming back in power some day

In this clause Peter refers to the second coming of the Lord Jesus to earth. This future event was foreshadowed by the powerful appearance of Jesus known as the "transfiguration," which is described in Matthew 17:1–8, Mark 9:1–8, and Luke 9:28–36. Peter was an eyewitness of that event.

ULT **of our Lord Jesus Christ**
UST our Lord Jesus the Messiah

Here, **our** refers to all believers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **by having become eyewitnesses**
UST we told you what we saw with our own eyes

This phrase indicates the means by which the apostles had made known to others the second coming of Jesus. The apostles based their teaching about the return of Jesus partly on their eyewitness experience. Alternate translation: [by means of becoming eyewitnesses]

> ULT **of the majesty of that one**
> UST the divinely majestic Jesus

The pronoun **that one** refers to Jesus. Alternate translation: [of the majesty of Jesus]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **of the majesty of that one**
> UST the divinely majestic Jesus

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **majesty** with an adjective such as "majestic." Alternate translation: [of his majestic nature]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
known	when we apostles told … that
Lord	Lord
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
majesty	the divinely majestic Jesus

2 Peter 1:17

ULT	UST
For he has received honor and glory from God the Father, such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory: "This is my Son, my Beloved, in whom I myself am well pleased."	*I can say we were eyewitnesses because we were there when God the Father honored him and glorified him, when Jesus heard a voice from the majestically glorious God. And the voice said, "This is my Son, whom I love very much. I am very pleased with him."*

ULT **For**
UST I can say we were eyewitnesses because {we were there when} God the Father honored him and glorified him

Here, **For** indicates that what follows in 1:17–18 is the reason that Peter can say in the previous verse that he was an eyewitness to the majesty of Jesus. Use a connector that indicates that this is a reason or explanation. Alternate translation: [I say this because]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **from God the Father**
UST I can say we were eyewitnesses because {we were there when} God the Father honored him and glorified him

Father is an important title for God.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **he has received honor and glory from God the Father**
UST I can say we were eyewitnesses because {we were there when} God the Father honored him and glorified him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **honor** and **glory** by translating them with equivalent expressions that use verbs. Alternate translation: [and God the Father honored and glorified him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory**
UST when Jesus heard a voice from the majestically glorious God

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [when he heard that voice come to him from the Majestic Glory] or [when he heard the voice of the Majestic Glory speak to him] or [when the Majestic Glory spoke to him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory**
UST when Jesus heard a voice from the majestically glorious God

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: [such a voice having been brought to him by the Majestic Glory, and this is what God said]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **having been brought to him**
UST when Jesus heard a voice

The pronoun **him** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state explicitly the idea behind this connection. Alternate translation: [having been brought to Jesus]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the Majestic Glory**
UST from the majestically glorious God

Peter refers to God in terms of his **Glory**. The glory of God is closely associated with God himself and here substitutes for his name. Alternate translation: [God, the Supreme Glory]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **my Son**
UST And the voice said … my Son

Son is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.
Support Reference: Translating Son and Father

ULT **my … my … myself**
UST my … I love very much. I am

The pronouns **my** and **myself** refer to God the Father, who is the one speaking in the quotation.
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
received	I can say we were eyewitnesses because {we were there when} God the Father honored him and glorified him
God the Father	God the Father
honor	honored
glory	glorified
Majestic	from the majestically glorious God
Glory	glorious
Son	And the voice said … Son
Beloved	whom I love very much
I … am well pleased	very pleased

2 Peter 1:18

ULT	UST
And we ourselves heard this voice, having been brought from heaven, being with him on the holy mountain.	*We ourselves also heard this voice of God that came from heaven when we were with Jesus on that sacred mountain.*

ULT we ourselves heard this voice, having been brought from heaven
UST We ourselves … heard this voice of God that came from heaven

With the words **we ourselves**, Peter is referring to himself and to the disciples James and John, who also heard the voice of God. Alternate translation: [we, James, John, and I, heard this voice that came from heaven]
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT having been brought from heaven
UST that came from heaven

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: [having come from heaven] or [that came from heaven]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT being with him
UST when we were with Jesus

This is a temporal phrase that can begin with "when." Alternate translation: [when we were with him]

ULT with him
UST with Jesus

Here, **him** refers to Jesus, not God the Father. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this reference explicitly. Alternate translation: [being with Jesus]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT the holy mountain
UST that sacred mountain

The **mountain** Peter refers to is the mountain on which Jesus was powerfully transformed in the event known as the "transfiguration." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this information explicitly. Alternate translation: [on the holy mountain on which Jesus was powerfully transformed]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heaven	heaven
holy	sacred

2 Peter 1:19

ULT	UST
And we have the very certain prophetic word, to which you do well to pay attention, as to a lamp shining in a dark place, until the day might dawn and the morning star might rise in your hearts,	*And we have what the prophets wrote previously, which is absolutely reliable. Pay attention to what they wrote, because it is like a lamp that is shining in a dark place that helps people see where they are going. That light will shine until the day of the return of the Messiah dawns and Jesus, the star that appears before the morning, gives your minds greater understanding.*

ULT **we have the very certain prophetic word**
UST we have what the prophets wrote {previously}, {which is} absolutely reliable

The word translated as **very certain** could refer to: (1) something that is extremely reliable. In this case, Peter is saying in 1:18–19 that we have two reliable witnesses to Jesus' glory: God's own voice speaking on the mountain of transfiguration and the extremely reliable prophetic scriptures. Alternate translation: [We also have the most reliable prophetic word]; or (2) something that is confirmed by something else. In this case, Peter is saying that God's voice on the mountain confirms, or makes even more trustworthy, the prophetic scripture that we already trusted completely. Alternate translation: [we have the prophetic word confirmed]

ULT **we have**
UST we have

Here, **we** refers to all believers, including Peter and his readers.
Support Reference: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

ULT **the very certain prophetic word**
UST what the prophets wrote {previously}, {which is} absolutely reliable

Peter uses the phrase **prophetic word** to refer to the entire Old Testament. It does not refer only to those Old Testament books called "the Prophets," nor only to the predictive prophecies within the Old Testament. Alternate translation: [the Scriptures, which the prophets spoke]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **to which you do well to pay attention**
UST Pay attention to what they wrote

Here the relative pronoun **which** refers to the prophetic word mentioned in the previous phrase. Peter instructs the believers to pay close attention to the prophetic message, which is the Old Testament.
Support Reference: Pronouns

ULT **to which you do well to pay attention**
UST Pay attention to what they wrote

Peter uses the statement **you do well** to tell his audience that they should pay attention to the Old Testament Scriptures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this phrase by translating this phrase as a suggestion or command. Alternate translation: [to which you should pay attention]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

ULT **as to a lamp shining in a dark place**
UST because it is like a lamp that is shining in a dark place that helps people see where they are going

Peter compares the prophetic word to a **lamp** that gives light in the darkness. Just as a lamp gives light in order for someone to see in **a dark place**, so the prophetic word gives believers guidance for how to live properly in this sin-filled world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this simile plainly. Alternate translation: [a guide for you to know how to live in this world]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **until the day might dawn**
UST That light will shine until the day {of the return of the Messiah} dawns

Peter speaks of Christ's second coming by calling it the new **day** that comes in the morning. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [until the day Christ returns]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the morning star might rise in your hearts**
UST Jesus, the star that appears before the morning, gives your minds greater understanding

Peter speaks of Christ as the **morning star**, which is a star that indicates daybreak and the end of the night. Christ will **rise** by bringing light into the hearts of believers, ending all doubt and bringing full understanding of who he is. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly or change the metaphor to a simile. Alternate translation: [Christ brings full understanding to you like the morning star shines its light into the world]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in your hearts**
UST your minds

Here, **hearts** is a metonym for people's minds. Alternate translation: [in your minds] or [to help you understand]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the morning star**
UST Jesus, the star that appears before the morning

The **morning star** refers to the planet Venus, which is sometimes visible in the sky just before the sun rises, thus indicating that daybreak is near. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make this information more explicit. Alternate translation: [the star that appears just before the sun rises]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophetic	prophets
well	Pay attention to what they wrote
lamp	lamp
day	day

2 Peter 1:20

ULT	UST
knowing this first, that every prophecy of scripture does not come from one's own interpretation.	*Above all, you should know that no prophet could interpret his prophecy by his own imagination.*

ULT **knowing this first**
UST Above all, you should know

Peter uses **first** here to refer to the degree of importance. It does not to refer to order in time. Alternate translation: [Most importantly, you must understand]

ULT **knowing this first**
UST Above all, you should know

Peter is using a statement to give an instruction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this by translating it as a command. If you do so, it might be helpful to start a new sentence here. Alternate translation: [Above all, know this]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

ULT **every prophecy of scripture does not come from one's own interpretation**
UST no prophet could interpret {his prophecy} by his own imagination

Here, **one's own interpretation** could mean: (1) that the Old Testament prophets did not base any of their prophecies on their own interpretations of what God had said, but only prophesied what God revealed to them. If it would be more natural in your language, you could change the order of information. Alternate translation: [no prophet interpreted his prophecy according to his own interpretation]; or (2) that no individual person can interpret scripture on his or her own, but only with the help of the Holy Spirit and the larger community of believers. Alternate translation: [no one is able to explain any prophecy in the Bible through his own ability]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **from one's own interpretation**
UST no … could interpret … by his own imagination

The word **interpretation** is an abstract noun that represents an action. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this with a verb. Alternate translation: [no prophet interpreted his prophecy according to what he himself thought]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knowing	know
prophecy	prophecy
scripture	no … could interpret … by his own imagination
interpretation	interpret

2 Peter 1:21

ULT	UST
For no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man, but men being carried along by the Holy Spirit spoke from God.	*This is true because no one ever prophesied a true prophecy according to what a human wanted. On the contrary, those who spoke prophecies from God did so by the Holy Spirit guiding them.*

ULT **For**
UST This is true because

For indicates that what follows is the reason that the statement of the previous verse is true. It could mean: (1) the prophets could not prophesy according to their own interpretations, because true prophecy could only come from the Holy Spirit. (2) no one can interpret prophecy without help from the Holy Spirit, because the prophecy came from the Holy Spirit. Alternate translation: [The reason for this is that]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man**
UST no one ever prophesied a {true} prophecy according to what a human wanted

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: [no prophet ever prophesied by the will of man] or [the will of man never produced any prophecy]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **no prophecy was ever brought by the will of man**
UST no one ever prophesied a {true} prophecy according to what a human wanted

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **will** with a verbal phrase, such as “what a man desires.” Alternate translation: [no prophecy was ever made according to what a man desires]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **by the will of man**
UST according to what a human wanted

Peter is using the term **man** in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: [by human desire]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

ULT **men being carried along by the Holy Spirit spoke from God**
UST those who spoke {prophecies} from God did so by the Holy Spirit guiding them

Peter speaks of the **Holy Spirit** helping the prophets to write what God wanted them to write as if the Holy Spirit **carried** them from one place to another. Alternate translation: [men spoke from God by the Holy Spirit directing them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **spoke from God**
> UST spoke {prophecies} from God did so

In this phrase, Peter is leaving out a word that it would need in many languages in order to be complete. If this word is required in your language, it can be supplied from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: [spoke prophecy from God]

Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
prophecy	prophecy
Holy Spirit	Holy Spirit
God	God

2 Peter 2

2 Peter 2 Introduction

2 Peter 2 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Prediction of false teachers (2:1–3)
2. Examples of divine judgment (2:4–10a)
3. Description and denunciation of false teachers (2:10b–22)

Peter continues this letter in 2:1–3 by predicting that false teachers will try to deceive the believers, just as false prophets did during the time true prophets were writing the Old Testament. Then in 2:4–10a Peter describes examples of God punishing those who acted similarly to the coming false teachers. Peter then closes this section in 2:10b–22 by describing the wicked character and deeds of these false teachers.

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Flesh

“Flesh” is a metaphor for a person’s sinful nature. It is not the physical part of man that is sinful. “Flesh” represents the human nature that rejects all things godly and desires what is sinful. This is the condition of all humans before they receive the Holy Spirit by believing in Jesus.

Implicit information

There are several analogies in 2:4–8 that are difficult to understand if the Old Testament has not yet been translated. Further explanation may be necessary. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

2 Peter 2:1

ULT	UST
Now false prophets were also among the people, as false teachers will also be among you, who will bring in heresies of destruction, and denying the master who bought them, bringing swift destruction on themselves.	*But people who falsely proclaimed messages from God were also amidst the Israelites. In the same way there will also be people who teach false messages amidst you. They will introduce opinions that will result in eternal condemnation. They will even reject their owner, Jesus, who redeemed them. As a result of this, God will soon condemn them for eternity.*

ULT **Now**
UST But

The term translated **Now** could refer to: (1) a new topic expressed by **Now** in the ULT. (2) a contrast between the false prophets in this clause and the true Old Testament prophets mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [But]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **among the people**
UST amidst the Israelites

Here, **the people** refers specifically to the Israelites. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the people of Israel] or [the Israelites]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **heresies of destruction**
UST opinions {that will result in} eternal condemnation

Here, **heresies** refers to opinions that are contrary to the teaching of Christ and the apostles. Alternate translation: [opinions of destruction]
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **heresies of destruction**
UST opinions {that will result in} eternal condemnation

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [destructive heresies] or [heresies that destroy]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **heresies of destruction**
UST opinions {that will result in} eternal condemnation

Peter is using the possessive form to describe an opinion that is characterized by **destruction**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the adjective “destructive” instead of the noun “destruction.” Alternate translation: [destructive heresies]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **heresies of destruction**
UST opinions {that will result in} eternal condemnation

Here, **destruction** could refer to: (1) the eternal damnation of those who teach or accept these **heresies**. Alternate translation: [heresies that result in their eternal damnation]; or (2) the destruction of the faith of those who teach or accept these **heresies**. Alternate translation: [heresies that destroy their faith in the Messiah]

ULT **the master who bought them**
UST their owner, {Jesus,} who redeemed them

Here, **master** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [master Jesus who bought them]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the master who bought them**
UST their owner, {Jesus,} who redeemed them

Peter uses the phrase **the master who bought** to speak of Jesus as the owner of the people he has saved from damnation by paying the penalty for their sins with his death. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this plainly. Alternate translation: [Jesus who saved them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **bringing swift destruction on themselves**
UST As a result of this, God will soon condemn them for eternity

Here, **bringing** indicates that this clause is the result of the deeds of the false teachers described in the previous clauses. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make a new sentence here and state this connection plainly. Alternate translation: [As a result, they are bringing swift destruction on themselves.]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **swift destruction**
UST As a result of this, God will soon condemn them for eternity

Here, **swift** could mean: (1) their destruction will come soon. Alternate translation: [destruction that will happen soon] or [imminent destruction]; or (2) their destruction will be sudden or quick. Alternate translation: [quick destruction]

ULT **bringing swift destruction on themselves**
UST As a result of this, God will soon condemn them for eternity

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verb, such as “destroy.” Alternate translation: [they are causing themselves to be destroyed soon]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
false prophets	people who falsely proclaimed messages from God
master	owner

2 Peter 2:2

ULT	UST
And many will follow their licentious acts, because of whom the way of truth will be slandered.	*And many people will do the same unrestrained immoral acts as these false teachers. Because of these false teachers, unbelievers will speak evil of Christianity.*

ULT **many**
UST many people

If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate explicitly, as the UST does, that **many** refers to people.
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **will follow**
UST will do the same unrestrained immoral acts as these false teachers

Here Peter uses the word **follow** to refer to someone imitating the actions of someone else, like someone who walks behind another person in the same direction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: [will imitate their licentious acts]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **their licentious acts**
UST will do the same unrestrained immoral acts as these false teachers

Here the pronoun **their** refers to the false teachers introduced in the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the licentious acts of these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **licentious acts**
UST will do the same unrestrained immoral acts as these false teachers

Here, **licentious acts** refers to immoral sexual actions that demonstrate a lack of self-control. Alternate translation: [uncontrolled sensual acts]

ULT **because of whom**
UST Because of these false teachers

Here, **whom** refers to the false teachers. It does not refer to the licentious acts in the previous clause. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate explicitly, as the UST does, that this refers to the false teachers. Alternate translation: [through these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the way of truth**
UST Christianity

Peter uses the phrase **the way of truth** here to refer to the Christian faith or how a Christian person lives his or her life. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: [the true Christian manner of living] or [the true Christian faith]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the way of truth**
UST Christianity

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **the way** that is characterized by **truth**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use the adjective "true" instead of the noun "truth." Alternate translation: [the true way]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the way of truth will be slandered**
UST unbelievers will speak evil of Christianity

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who will do the action. Alternate translation: [unbelievers will slander the way of truth]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the way of truth will be slandered**
UST unbelievers will speak evil of Christianity

Peter speaks of **the way of truth** as if it were a person who could be **slandered** or shown disrespect. Alternate translation: [they will say bad things about the way of truth]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **the way of truth will be slandered**
UST unbelievers will speak evil of Christianity

Peter assumes that his audience will know that unbelievers will be the ones who slander the Christian faith when they see the sensual lives of the false teachers and their followers. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could indicate this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the way of truth will be slandered by unbelievers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
slandered	unbelievers will speak evil of

2 Peter 2:3

ULT	UST
And in greed, they will exploit you with false words, for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep.	*And due to their greedy hearts, these false teachers will make a profit off of you by telling you lies. God condemned them a long time ago, and God will certainly destroy them.*

ULT **in greed**
UST due to their greedy hearts

Here, **in** indicates the reason for what the false teachers do. Alternate translation: [because of greed]

ULT **in greed**
UST due to their greedy hearts

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **greed** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective, such as "greedy." Alternate translation: [because they are greedy]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **with false words**
UST by telling … lies

Here, **false words** are the means by which the false teachers will exploit their victims. Alternate translation: [by means of false words]

ULT **with false words**
UST by telling … lies

Peter is using the term **words** to describe the teachings of the false teachers that were conveyed by using **words**. Alternate translation: [by false teachings]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **they will exploit**
UST these false teachers will make a profit off of

Here, **they** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these false teachers will exploit you]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle**
UST God condemned them a long time ago

Here, **whom** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this explicitly. Alternate translation: [condemnation from long ago is not idle for these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle**
UST God condemned them a long time ago

Here, **for whom** indicates that the condemnation is directed again the false teachers. Alternate translation: [against whom condemnation from long ago is not idle]

ULT **for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep**
UST God condemned them a long time ago, and God will certainly destroy them

These two long phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the false teachers will certainly be condemned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could combine them. Alternate translation: [their destruction from long ago is certain]
Support Reference: Parallelism

ULT **for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep**
UST God condemned them a long time ago, and God will certainly destroy them

You can translate these phrases with verbs in positive terms. Alternate translation: [their condemnation from long ago is active, and their destruction is awake]
Support Reference: Double Negatives

ULT **condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep**
UST God condemned them a long time ago, and God will certainly destroy them

Peter speaks of **condemnation** and **destruction** as if they are people who can be **idle** or **sleep**. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express the meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [condemnation from long ago is not ineffective, and their destruction is not delayed]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **for whom condemnation from long ago is not idle, and their destruction does not sleep**
UST God condemned them a long time ago, and God will certainly destroy them

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns “condemnation” and “destruction” by stating the ideas behind them with verbal forms. Alternate translation: [they are not idly condemned from long ago, and they will not be destroyed too late]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
greed	due to their greedy hearts
condemnation	condemned

2 Peter 2:4

ULT	UST
For if God did not spare angels who had sinned, but, in chains of darkness throwing down to Tartarus, he handed over those being kept for judgment;	*This judgment is certain because God did not let the angels who acted sinfully remain unpunished. On the contrary, he threw them into hell where they are chained in darkness. God imprisoned these sinful angels there and is holding them there in order to judge them.*

ULT **For**
UST This judgment is certain because

For indicates here that Peter is giving the reason for the result he implicitly described in the previous verse. He is saying why the destruction of the false teachers is certain. Alternate translation: [This is because]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **if**
UST This judgment is certain because

Here, **if** indicates the beginning of a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you could translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: [Since God did not spare the angels who had sinned]

Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **did not spare**
UST did not let … remain unpunished

Here, **spare** means "to refrain from punishing." Alternate translation: [did not refrain from punishing]

ULT **angels who had sinned**
UST the angels who acted sinfully

Peter uses **who had sinned** to distinguish the angels who were punished by God from those that were not.

Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **in chains of darkness**
UST where they are chained in darkness

Some of the best ancient manuscripts read "pits" instead of "chains." If a translation of the Bible exists in your region, you may wish to use the reading that it has. If a translation of the Bible does not exist in your region, you may wish to use the reading in the ULT.

Support Reference: Textual Variants

ULT **in chains of darkness**
UST where they are chained in darkness

This phrase could refer to: (1) chains in a very dark place. Alternate translation: [in chains in darkness]; or (2) a very deep darkness that imprisons them like chains. Alternate translation: [bound in darkness like chains]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **throwing down to Tartarus**
UST he threw them into hell

The word **Tartarus** is a term from Ancient Greek religion that refers to the place where evil spirits and wicked men who have died are punished. Some Ancient Jewish literature written in Greek uses **Tartarus** as a term for the place where God punishes the wicked. Alternate translation: [he cast them into hell]
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **he handed over**
UST God imprisoned {these sinful angels} there

God is the one who **handed over** the angels who had sinned. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could make that explicit in your translation. Alternate translation: [God handed over]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **he handed over**
UST God imprisoned {these sinful angels} there

Here, Peter speaks of God imprisoning the angels who sinned like someone who has **handed over** a criminal to the prison guards for imprisonment. Alternate translation: [imprisoned]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **for judgment**
UST in order to judge them

This phrase gives the purpose or goal for which the sinning angels are being held in captivity. Alternate translation: [for the purpose of judgment]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **for judgment**
UST in order to judge them

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **judgment** by translating it with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [to be judged]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **those being kept for judgment**
UST and is holding them there in order to judge them

This phrase refers to the sinful angels mentioned earlier in the verse. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [those sinful angels who are being kept for judgment]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **those being kept for judgment**
> UST and is holding them there in order to judge them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active verbal form and you can indicate who is doing the action. Alternate translation: [those whom God is keeping for judgment]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	God
angels	angels
sinned	who acted sinfully
in chains	where they are chained
judgment	judge

2 Peter 2:5

ULT	UST
and he did not spare the ancient world, but protected the eighth, Noah, a preacher of righteousness, having brought a flood upon the world of the ungodly ones;	*And God did not let the people who lived in the world long ago remain unpunished. However, he preserved eight people, including Noah, who was a righteous herald, when he destroyed by a flood the ungodly people who lived in the world at that time.*

ULT **and**
UST And

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the second condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you could translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: [Since]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **he did not spare the ancient world**
UST God did not let {the people who lived in} the world long ago remain unpunished

Here, **world** refers to the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: [he did not spare the people who lived in the ancient times]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **he did not spare**
UST God did not let … remain unpunished

As in 2:4, the word **spare** here means "to refrain from punishing." Alternate translation: [did not refrain from punishing]

ULT **he did not spare**
UST God did not let … remain unpunished

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful for your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [God did not spare]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the eighth, Noah**
UST eight people, including Noah

Here, **eighth** is an idiom used to refer to a group of eight people. It means that Noah was one of only eight people in the ancient world whom God did not destroy. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the literal meaning of the idiom. Alternate translation: [eight people, including Noah] or [with seven others, Noah]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Noah, a preacher of righteousness**
UST including Noah, who was a righteous herald

This phrase gives us more information about Noah. It tells us that Noah proclaimed **righteousness** to the ungodly people of the ancient world. It does not distinguish this Noah from any other person named Noah.
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **a preacher of righteousness**
UST who was a righteous herald

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **righteousness** with an equivalent expression. In this context, the term refers righteous deeds. Alternate translation: [a preacher of righteous deeds] or [a preacher of how to act rightly]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **a preacher of righteousness**
UST who was a righteous herald

Peter could be using the possessive form to refer to: (1) a preacher who is characterized by righteousness. Alternate translation: [a preacher who is righteous]; or (2) a preacher who tells others to live righteously. Alternate translation: [one who urged others to live righteously]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **having brought a flood upon the world of the ungodly ones**
UST when he destroyed by a flood the ungodly {people who lived in the} world at that time

This clause indicates when God protected Noah and his other seven family members, when he **brought a flood upon the world**, as it is translated in the UST.

ULT **upon the world of the ungodly ones**
UST when he destroyed by a flood the ungodly {people who lived in the} world at that time

Peter could be using the possessive form to refer to: (1) the human content of the ancient world. Alternate translation: [the world that contained ungodly people]; or (2) the world as being characterized by ungodliness. Alternate translation: [the ungodly world]
Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
world	world
Noah	Noah
righteousness	righteous
flood	flood
world	world
ungodly	ungodly

2 Peter 2:6

ULT	UST
and the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, having reduced to ashes, he condemned to destruction, having set an example of the things that are going to happen to the ungodly ones;	*And God condemned the cities called Sodom and Gomorrah to be destroyed by burning them completely to ashes. This resulted in God making those cities an example of what will happen to people who dishonor God.*

ULT **and**
UST And

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the third condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you could translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: [Since]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **and the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, having reduced to ashes, he condemned to destruction**
UST And God condemned the cities {called} Sodom and Gomorrah to be destroyed by burning them completely to ashes

If it would be natural in your language, you could reverse the order of these phrases. Alternate translation: [and he condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to destruction, having reduced them to ashes]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah, having reduced to ashes**
UST the cities {called} Sodom and Gomorrah … by burning them completely to ashes

This phrase indicates the means by which God destroyed **Sodom and Gomorrah**. Alternate translation: [by means of reducing the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah to ashes]

ULT **he condemned to destruction**
UST God condemned … to be destroyed

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could state that explicitly. Alternate translation: [God condemned them to destruction]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **he condemned to destruction**
UST God condemned … to be destroyed

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **destruction** by translating the idea behind it with an verb, such as “destroy.” Alternate translation: [he condemned them to be destroyed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **having set an example {of the things that} are going to happen to the ungodly ones**
UST This resulted in God making {those cities} an example of what will happen to people who dishonor God

This clause indicates the result of what happened in the previous clauses of the verse. God's destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah resulted in them being an **example** and a warning of what happens to others who disobey God. Alternate translation: [with the result that God set them as an example of the things that will happen to the ungodly]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **to the ungodly ones**
UST to people who dishonor God

Here, **ungodly** refers to wicked people in general, not to one specific wicked person. Alternate translation: [to an ungodly person] or [to ungodly people]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Sodom	Sodom
Gomorrah	Gomorrah
condemned	condemned
ungodly	to people who dishonor God

2 Peter 2:7

ULT	UST
and he rescued righteous Lot, being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness,	*And God rescued Lot, who was a righteous man. Lot was greatly distressed because of the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom.*

ULT **and**
UST And

Here, **and** indicates the beginning of the fourth condition in a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you could translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: [since]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **he rescued**
UST God rescued

Here, **he** refers to God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation, as in the UST: [God rescued]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness**
UST Lot was greatly distressed because of the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

This clause is giving more information about **Lot**. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could begin a new sentence here to clarify this. Alternate translation: [He was being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **being oppressed by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness**
UST Lot was greatly distressed because of the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: [the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness oppressed him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness**
UST because of the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

Here, **by** could refer to: (1) the thing that was oppressing Lot, as in the ULT. (2) the reason why Lot was oppressed. Alternate translation: [because of the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **by the behavior of the lawless ones**
UST because of the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **behavior** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [by what the lawless ones did] or [by how the lawless ones acted]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness**
UST the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

Here, **in** indicates the content of what the lawless people were doing. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate **in licentiousness** with an adjective. Alternate translation: [the licentious behavior of the lawless ones]

ULT **the behavior of the lawless ones in licentiousness**
UST the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **licentiousness** with an adjective. See how you translated the plural form of this term in 2:2. Alternate translation: [the licentious behavior of the lawless ones] or [the wild sensual behavior of the lawless ones]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the lawless ones**
UST the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom

Here, **the lawless ones** refers to the people who lived in the city of Sodom, where Lot lived. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: [of the lawless people of Sodom] or [of the people who act as if there is no law in Sodom]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	righteous
Lot	Lot
lawless	the unrestrained immoral acts of the people who acted lawlessly in Sodom
he rescued	God rescued

2 Peter 2:8

ULT	UST
(for, by seeing and by hearing, that righteous man, living among them day from day, was tormenting his righteous soul by lawless works);	*(When he lived with those wicked people in Sodom, that righteous man Lot distressed himself every day by what he saw and heard. He did so because of the things people did that were against God's law.)*

ULT **for**
UST and

Peter uses **for** here to provide background information about Lot's life in Sodom. This is to help readers understand why Peter called Lot a righteous person in the previous verse. Peter is not using **for** here to indicate result. Use the natural form in your language for introducing background information. Alternate translation: [now]
Support Reference: Background Information

ULT **for, by seeing and by hearing**
UST by what he saw and heard

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract nouns **seeing** and **hearing** with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: [for by what he saw and what he heard]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **that righteous man**
UST that righteous man Lot

This refers to Lot. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly. Alternate translation: [righteous Lot]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **living among them**
UST When he lived with those wicked people in Sodom

This clause indicates the time when Lot dwelled in Sodom. Alternate translation: [when he lived among them]

ULT **them**
UST with those wicked people in Sodom

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the inhabitants of Sodom. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could specify what the pronoun **them** refers to. Alternate translation: [the people of Sodom]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **living among them day from day**
UST When he lived with those wicked people in Sodom … every day

This phrase, **day from day**, is an idiom meaning "day after day" or "every day." You may need to express this literally in your language. Alternate translation: [living among them day after day] or [living among them every day]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **was tormenting his righteous soul**
UST distressed himself

Here, **soul** refers to Lot's thoughts and emotions. The immoral behavior of the citizens of Sodom and Gomorrah disturbed him emotionally. Alternate translation: [was greatly disturbed]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **by lawless works**
UST He did so because of the things people did that were against God's law

This phrase could mean: (1) the **lawless works** were the means by which Lot tormented his soul. Alternate translation: [with lawless works]; or (2) the **lawless works** were the reason why Lot tormented his soul. Alternate translation: [because of lawless works]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
righteous	righteous
day	day
day	day
soul	himself
righteous	himself
lawless	He did so because of the things people did that were against God's law
tormenting	distressed

2 Peter 2:9

ULT	UST
the Lord knows how to rescue godly ones from a trial, and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment,	*Since these things are all true, then you can be sure that the Lord knows how to rescue people who honor him from being tried. And the Lord also knows how to keep those who do unrighteous deeds ready in order to punish them at the time when he judges.*

ULT **the Lord knows how**
UST Since these things are all true, then you can be sure that the Lord knows how

This verse and the next verse are the end of a conditional sentence that extends from 2:4 to 2:10. Peter is giving the result of the previous conditions being true. If you have made 2:4–10 into separate sentences, then you will need to indicate that 2:9 is the result of the previous conditions being true. Alternate translation: [Therefore, it is true that the Lord knows how] or [Since these things are true, it is also true that the Lord knows how]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment**
UST And {the Lord also knows how} to keep those who do unrighteous deeds {ready} {in order} to punish them at the time when he judges

Here, **and** could refer to: (1) a contrast between the previous clause and what follows, as in the ULT and UST. (2) a simple connection between the previous clause and what follows. Alternate translation: [and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **a trial, and to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment**
UST being tried. And {the Lord also knows how} to keep those who do unrighteous deeds {ready} {in order} to punish them at the time when he judges

In this clause, Peter is leaving out some words that it would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the previous clause. Alternate translation: [a trial and the Lord knows how to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished in the day of judgment]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **to be punished**
UST in order to punish them

This is a purpose clause. Peter is stating the purpose for which God is keeping the unrighteous people. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): [in order to be punished]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **to keep the unrighteous ones to be punished**
UST the Lord … knows how to keep those who do unrighteous deeds {ready} {in order} to punish them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: [to keep the unrighteous ones to punish them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **in the day of judgment**
> UST at the time when he judges

Here, **in** could refer to: (1) when the unrighteous ones will be punished. Alternate translation: [on the day of judgment]; or (2) the point in time up to which the unrighteous ones will be punished. Alternate translation: [until the day of judgment]

> ULT **the day of judgment**
> UST at the time when he judges

Peter is using the possessive form to describe a **day** that is characterized by **judgment**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: [the day when God judges mankind]

Support Reference: Possession

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knows	knows
Lord	Lord
godly	people who honor him
trial	being tried
to rescue	to rescue
unrighteous	unrighteous
day	at the time when he judges
judgment	judges
punished	punish

2 Peter 2:10

ULT	UST
but especially the ones going after the flesh in its lusts of defilement, and despising authority. Audacious ones! Self-willed ones! They do not tremble while insulting glorious ones;	*And he will punish especially those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, which are things that make them displeasing to God. These people also scorn divine authority. How bold they are! They do whatever they wish! They are not even afraid to insult God's glorious angels.*

ULT **but**
UST And he will punish

Here, **but** indicates a connection between the last clause of the previous verse and what follows. It does not indicate a contrast between "the unrighteous" in the previous verse and "those going after the flesh" in this verse. Alternate translation: [and especially those going after the flesh]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **the ones going after**
UST those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God

Peter uses the phrase **going after** to refer to habitually doing something. This expression is frequently used in the Bible to describe people worshiping false gods or engaging in sexual immorality. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this plainly. Alternate translation: [those habitually engaging in]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the flesh**
UST those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God

Here, **flesh** is used to refer to person's sinful nature. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this figure of speech literally. Alternate translation: [their sinful nature]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **in {its} lusts of defilement**
UST those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God

Here, **in** indicates that this phrase shows the means by which the wicked people go after the flesh. Alternate translation: [by means of practicing its lusts of defilement]

ULT **in {its} lusts of defilement**
UST those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **defilement** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [in its lusts that defile]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **and despising authority**
UST These people also scorn divine authority

Here, **and** indicates that this clause provides an additional characteristic of those mentioned in the previous clause. It does not indicate a second group of wicked people. These wicked people not only pursue their sinful desires, but also despise authority. Alternate translation: [and who also despise authority]
Support Reference: Connecting Words and Phrases

ULT **despising authority**
UST These people … scorn divine authority

Here, **authority** could refer to: (1) God's authority, as suggested from the examples of rebelling against God in the previous verses. Alternate translation: [despising God's authority]; or (2) angelic authority, as suggested by the insulting of "glorious ones" mentioned in the remainder of the verse. Alternate translation: [despising the authority of angels]

ULT **Audacious ones**
UST How bold they are

Audacious ones marks the beginning of the second section of this chapter, which continues until the end of 2:22. In this section Peter describes the wicked character and deeds of the false teachers.

ULT **Audacious ones! Self-willed ones**
UST How bold {they are}! They do whatever they wish

The words **Audacious ones** and **Self-willed ones** are exclamations that emphasize the bold pride of the false teachers. Alternate translation: [They are so audacious and self-willed!] or [How audacious and self-willed they are!]
Support Reference: Exclamations

ULT **Self-willed ones**
UST They do whatever they wish

Self-willed means "doing whatever one wants to do." Alternate translation: [Those who do whatever they want]

ULT **They do not tremble**
UST They are not even afraid

Here, **They** refers to the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [These false teachers do not tremble]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **while insulting glorious ones**
UST to insult God's glorious angels

This clause indicates the time when the false teachers do not tremble. Alternate translation: [when insulting glorious ones]

ULT **glorious ones**
UST God's glorious angels

Here, **glorious ones** could refer to: (1) spiritual beings, such as angels, demons, or both. Alternate translation: [glorious spiritual beings]; or (2) important human beings, such as church leaders. Alternate translation: [glorious people]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
lusts	those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God
of defilement	those who keep on doing what their sinful hearts want to do, {which are things that make them} displeasing to God
authority	authority
glorious	glorious
tremble	They are … even afraid
while insulting	to insult

2 Peter 2:11

ULT	UST
whereas angels, being greater in strength and power, do not bring an insulting judgment against them in the presence of the Lord.	*But God's angels, even though they are much more powerful than these people, do not accuse glorious beings in an insulting manner in front of God!*

ULT **being greater in strength and power**
UST even though they are much more powerful than these people

This clause could refer to: (1) a contrast between the description of the **angels** in this clause with their behavior in the next clause. Alternate translation: [despite being greater in strength and power]; or (2) a description of the **angels**. Alternate translation: [who are greater in strength and power]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **being greater in strength and power**
UST even though they are much more powerful than these people

Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the surrounding context, which is a description of the false teachers. Alternate translation: [being greater in strength and power than these false teachers]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **being greater in strength and power**
UST even though they are much more powerful than these people

The words **strength** and **power** mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. Together, the words describe extreme power. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate this pair of words with a single expression. Alternate translation: [being much more powerful]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **do not bring an insulting judgment against them**
UST do not accuse glorious beings in an insulting manner in front of God

Here, **them** could mean: (1) the "glorious ones." Alternate translation: [do not bring an insulting judgment against these glorious ones.]; or (2) the false teachers. Alternate translation: [do not bring an insulting judgment against these false teachers.]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
angels	angels
Lord	do … accuse glorious beings in an insulting manner in front of God
insulting	do … accuse glorious beings in an insulting manner in front of God
judgment	do … accuse glorious beings in an insulting manner in front of God

2 Peter 2:12

ULT	UST
But these men, as unreasoning animals, having by nature been born for capture and destruction, slandering about those things in which they are ignorant, they will also be destroyed in their destruction,	*However, these false teachers are like animals that cannot think rationally. According to the way they naturally behave, they were born so that others may capture and destroy them. They say bad things about things they do not even know. God will surely destroy them when it is time for their destruction.*

ULT **these men**
UST these false teachers

Here, **these {men}** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. Alternate translation: [these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **these {men}, as unreasoning animals**
UST these {false teachers} are like animals that cannot think rationally

Peter describes the false teachers by comparing them to **unreasoning animals**. Just as **animals** cannot think rationally, neither can these people. Alternate translation: [these false teachers are like animals who are not capable of thinking rationally]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **having by nature been born for capture and destruction**
UST According to the way they naturally behave, they were born so that others may capture and destroy them

This clause gives more information about the unreasoning animals and thus, by way of comparison, the false teachers. Alternate translation: [which have by nature been born for capture and destruction]
Support Reference: Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

ULT **having by nature been born for capture and destruction**
UST According to the way they naturally behave, they were born so that others may capture and destroy them

Here, **by nature** means that the unreasoning animals (and false teachers by comparison) were destined for capture and destruction due to their very nature as animals born for this purpose. Alternate translation: [according to their nature, these animals are born for capture and destruction]

ULT **for capture and destruction**
UST so that others may capture and destroy them

This is a purpose clause. The word **for** here indicates that what follows it is the purpose for which these animals have been born. Alternate translation: [for the purpose of capture and destruction]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **for capture and destruction**
UST so that others may capture and destroy them

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **capture** and **destruction** by stating the ideas behind them with verbs. Alternate translation: [in order to capture and destroy them]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **slandering about {those things} in which they are ignorant**
UST They say bad things about things they do not even know

This clause could refer to: (1) more information about the false teachers. Alternate translation: [who slander those things in which they are ignorant]; or (2) the reason the false teachers will be destroyed. Alternate translation: [because they slander those things in which they are ignorant]

ULT **about {those things} in which they are ignorant**
UST about things they do not even know

Here, **those things** could refer to: (1) the "glorious ones" of 2:10. Alternate translation: [who slander those of whom they are ignorant]; or (2) the Christian teachings that these false teachers are rejecting. Alternate translation: [who slander the teachings of which they are ignorant]

ULT **they will also be destroyed in their destruction**
UST God will surely destroy them when it is time for their destruction

Here, the pronouns **they** and **their** refer to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these false teachers will also be destroyed in their destruction]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **they will also be destroyed**
UST God will surely destroy them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who will do the action. Alternate translation: [God will also destroy them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **they will also be destroyed**
UST God will surely destroy them

Here, **also** is used for emphasis and may be translated as "indeed" or "surely." Alternate translation: [they will indeed be destroyed] or [they will surely be destroyed]

ULT **in their destruction**
UST when it is time for their destruction

This clause indicates the time when the false teachers will be destroyed. Alternate translation: [at the time of their destruction]

> ULT **in their destruction**
> UST when it is time for their destruction

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verb, such as “destroy.” Alternate translation: [when they are destroyed]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
animals	animals
capture	others may capture
slandering	They say bad things

2 Peter 2:13

ULT	UST
being harmed as wages of unrighteousness, considering as pleasure the reveling in the day, stains and blemishes, reveling in their deceptions while feasting with you;	*These false teachers suffer harm as the proper punishment for their harmful deeds. They are pleased to party in an immoral manner even during the daytime. Like ugly stains on one's clothing, they are disgraceful to your gatherings! They even celebrate their deceptive deeds while eating a meal with you!*

ULT **being harmed {as} wages of unrighteousness**
UST These false teachers suffer harm as the proper punishment for their harmful deeds

Peter speaks of the punishment that the false teachers will receive as if it were a wage they had earned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this plainly. Alternate translation: [receiving the punishment they deserve for their unrighteousness]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of unrighteousness**
UST for their harmful deeds

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **unrighteousness** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [of the wrong things they have done]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **pleasure**
UST They are pleased

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **pleasure** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [something that pleases]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the reveling in the day**
UST to party in an immoral manner {even} during the daytime

Here, **reveling** refers to immoral activity that includes gluttony, drunkenness, and sexual activity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this abstract noun by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [their ability to revel in the day]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the reveling in the day**
UST to party in an immoral manner {even} during the daytime

This phrase indicates the time when the false teachers were **reveling**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate **in** as "during." Doing these things "during the day" indicates that these people are not ashamed of this behavior. Alternate translation: [reveling during the day]

ULT **stains and blemishes**
UST Like ugly stains {on one's clothing,} they are disgraceful to your gatherings

Peter speaks of the false teachers as if they were **stains** or **blemishes** on a garment that cause shame for those who wear it. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating it as a simile. Alternate translation: [like stains and blemishes on clothes, which cause disgrace]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **stains and blemishes**
UST Like ugly stains {on one's clothing,} they are disgraceful to your gatherings

The words **stains** and **blemishes** share similar meanings. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate them with a single expression. Alternate translation: [unsightly stains]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **stains and blemishes**
UST Like ugly stains {on one's clothing,} they are disgraceful to your gatherings

For emphasis, here Peter is leaving out some of the words that a sentence would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the context. Alternate translation: [They are stains and blemishes]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **reveling in their deceptions**
UST They even celebrate their deceptive deeds

If it would be helpful in your language, you could translate the abstract noun **deceptions** with an adjective like "deceptive." Alternate translation: [reveling in their deceptive deeds]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
being harmed	suffer
of unrighteousness	for their harmful deeds
day	to party in an immoral manner {even} during the daytime
deceptions	deceptive deeds
feasting	while eating a meal

2 Peter 2:14

ULT	UST
having eyes full of an adulteress, and never ceasing from sin, enticing unstable souls, having hearts trained in covetousness, children of cursing.	*They constantly want to have immoral sexual relations with every woman they see. They cannot stop sinning. They lure spiritually weak people into sin. As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy. God has cursed them!*

ULT **having eyes full of an adulteress**
UST They constantly want to have immoral sexual relations with {every} woman they see

Here, **eyes** refers to a person's desires, and **eyes full** means that a person constantly desires one thing. Alternate translation: [constantly desiring an adulteress]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **having eyes full of an adulteress**
UST They constantly want to have immoral sexual relations with {every} woman they see

This clause could mean: (1) the false teachers constantly desired to have immoral sexual relations with any woman they saw, thereby viewing every women as a potential adulteress. Alternate translation: [constantly desiring women with whom to commit adultery]; or (2) the false teachers were constantly looking for immoral women with whom to have immoral sexual relations. Alternate translation: [constantly seeking sexually immoral women]

ULT **enticing unstable souls**
UST They lure spiritually weak people into sin

This clause refers to the actions of the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these false teachers entice unstable souls]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **enticing unstable souls**
UST They lure spiritually weak people into sin

Here, **souls** refers to persons. Alternate translation: [enticing unstable people]
Support Reference: Synecdoche

ULT **having hearts trained in covetousness**
UST As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy

This clause refers to the actions of the false teachers Peter introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [they have hearts trained in covetousness]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **having hearts trained in covetousness**
UST As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: [they trained their hearts to be covetous]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having hearts trained in covetousness**
UST As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy

Peter is using **hearts** to refer to whole persons, including their thoughts, desires, and emotions. The term can thus be translated here with the reflexive pronoun “themselves.” Alternate translation: [having trained themselves to covet]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **having hearts trained in covetousness**
UST As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **covetousness** with a verb. Alternate translation: [having training their hearts to covet]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **children of cursing**
UST God has cursed them

Peter is using a Hebrew idiom in which a person is said to be a “child” of the thing that characterizes that person. Here, **children of cursing** refers to people who are cursed by God. He is not speaking of people who curse others. Alternate translation: [accursed people]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **children of cursing**
UST God has cursed them

These words are an exclamation that emphasizes the wickedness of the false teachers. Alternate translation: [They are such cursed children!] or [What cursed children they are!]
Support Reference: Exclamations

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
adulteress	They constantly want to have immoral sexual relations with {every} woman they see
sin	sinning
souls	They lure spiritually weak people into sin
in covetousness	As athletes train for sports, these false teachers train themselves to be greedy
cursing	cursed

2 Peter 2:15

ULT	UST
Abandoning the straight way, they have gone astray, having followed the way of Balaam of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness.	*They refuse to live the way God wants them to. They are acting wickedly. They are imitating what Balaam, the son of Bosor, did long ago. He loved to receive money as payment for wicked deeds.*

ULT **Abandoning the straight way**
UST They refuse to live the way God wants them to

Peter uses the metaphor **Abandoning the straight way** to give an image of walkers leaving a certain pathway. He speaks of the false teachers refusing to live their lives in obedience to the Lord as if they had stopped walking on the Lord's path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [refusing to live in obedience to God]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the straight way**
UST They refuse to live the way God wants them to

Here, **the straight way** refers to the way of living life that is right and pleasing to the Lord. Peter may also be using it here to refer specifically to the Christian faith, similar to his use of "the way of truth" in 2:2. Alternate translation: [the right way of the Lord]

Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **they have gone astray**
UST They are acting wickedly

Here, Peter continues the path metaphor from the previous clause. He describes the wicked lifestyles of the false teachers as if they had been **led astray** from the straight path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly. Alternate translation: [they have been behaving wickedly]

Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **they have gone astray**
UST They are acting wickedly

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form. Alternate translation: [they went astray]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having followed the way of Balaam of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness**
UST They are imitating what Balaam, the son of Bosor, did {long ago}. He loved {to receive money as} payment for wicked deeds

In this verse, Peter compares the false teachers to **Balaam**. Peter assumes that his readers will know that he is referring to a story recorded in the Old Testament book of Numbers. In that story, Balaam was hired by wicked kings to curse the Israelites. When God did not allow Balaam to do so, he used wicked women to seduce the Israelites into sexual immorality and idol worship so that God would punish them for their disobedience. Balaam did these wicked things because he wanted to be paid by the wicked kings, but he was eventually killed by the Israelites when they conquered the land of Canaan. You could indicate this explicitly if it would be helpful to your readers, particularly if they would not know the story. Alternate translation, as a statement: [following the way of Balaam son of Bosor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness so much that he led the Israelites into immorality and idolatry in order to receive money]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **having followed the way of Balaam of Bosor**
UST They are imitating what Balaam, the son of Bosor, did long ago

Here, Peter uses the word **followed** to refer to someone imitating the actions of someone else, like someone who walks behind another person in the same direction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: [having imitated the way of Balaam son of Bosor]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **of Balaam of Bosor**
UST what Balaam, the son of Bosor, did long ago

Bosor is the name of a man.
Support Reference: How to Translate Names

ULT **the way of Balaam of Bosor**
UST what Balaam, the son of Bosor, did long ago

Here, Peter uses **the way of Balaam** to refer to how Balaam lived his life. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: [the manner of living of Balaam son of Bosor]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **who loved the wages of unrighteousness**
UST He loved {to receive money as} payment for wicked deeds

Here, the pronoun **who** refers to Balaam. It does not refer to Bosor, nor to the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this directly. If you begin a new sentence, you will have to replace the comma with a period. Alternate translation: [Balaam loved the wages of unrighteousness]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **who loved the wages of unrighteousness**
UST He loved {to receive money as} payment for wicked deeds

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **wages** that are characterized by **unrighteousness**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: [who loved the unrighteous wages]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the wages of unrighteousness**
UST to receive money as payment for wicked deeds

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **unrighteousness** with the adjective "unrighteous." Alternate translation: [the unrighteous wages] or [the wages for unrighteous acts]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Balaam	Balaam
unrighteousness	for wicked deeds
loved	loved

2 Peter 2:16

ULT	UST
But he had a rebuke for his own transgression —a mute donkey, having spoken in a voice of a man, restrained the irrationality of the prophet.	*However, God rebuked him for his wicked deed against Israel. And even though donkeys do not speak, God used Balaam's donkey to speak to him with a human voice and stop his foolish action.*

ULT **he had a rebuke**
UST God rebuked him for his wicked deed against Israel

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **rebuke** as a verb and you could state who did the action. Alternate translation: [God rebuked him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **he had a rebuke**
UST God rebuked him for his wicked deed against Israel

If it would be helpful in your language, you could specify who rebuked Balaam. This clause could mean: (1) the donkey rebuked Balaam. Alternate translation: [a donkey rebuked him]; or (2) God rebuked Balaam through the donkey. Alternate translation: [God rebuked him]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for his own transgression**
UST for his wicked deed against Israel

This **transgression** specifically refers to Balaam's use of wicked women to lead the Israelites into sexual immorality and idolatry. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [for his wicked act of leading the Israelites into immorality]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the irrationality of the prophet**
UST and stop his foolish action

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **irrationality** with an adjective like "irrational" or "foolish." Alternate translation: [the irrational action of the prophet] or [the foolish action of the prophet]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **restrained the irrationality of the prophet**
UST and stop his foolish action

Here, **the prophet** refers to Balaam. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [restrained the madness of the prophet Balaam]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
rebuke	rebuked
transgression	for his wicked deed against Israel
donkey	donkeys
prophet	and stop his foolish action

2 Peter 2:17

ULT	UST
These men are waterless springs and mists driven by a storm, for whom the gloom of darkness has been reserved.	*These false teachers are useless, like springs that do not give water. They are like clouds that the storm pushes away before they can give rain. God has reserved the darkness of hell for them.*

ULT **These men**
UST These false teachers

These {men} refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [These false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **These {men} are waterless springs**
UST These {false teachers} are {useless}, {like} springs that do not give water

Peter speaks of the false teachers to describe their uselessness. People expect **springs** to provide water to quench thirst, but **waterless springs** leave thirsty people disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly or turn the metaphor into a simile. Alternate translation: [These men are disappointing, like springs without water]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **mists driven by a storm**
UST They are like clouds that the storm pushes away before they can give rain

Peter gives a second figurative description of the uselessness of the false teachers. When people see storm clouds, they expect rain to fall. When the winds from the **storm** blow the clouds away before the rain can fall, the people are disappointed. In the same way, false teachers, although they promise many things, are unable to do what they promise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly, or turn the metaphor into a simile. Alternate translation: [they never give what they promise] or [they are disappointing like rain clouds that the storm drives away]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **These {men} are waterless springs and mists driven by a storm**
UST These {false teachers} are {useless}, {like} springs that do not give water. {They are like} clouds that the storm pushes away before they can give rain

These two metaphors mean similar things. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this connection by translating them with a single expression. Alternate translation: [These are men who surely never give what they promise] or [These are men who surely disappoint]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **for whom the gloom of darkness has been reserved**
UST God has reserved the darkness {of hell} for them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: [for whom God has reserved the gloom of darkness]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the gloom of darkness**
UST the darkness of hell

This could mean: (1) the **gloom** is characterized by **darkness**. Alternate translation: [the dark gloom]; or (2) the **gloom** is identical to the **darkness**. Alternate translation: [the gloom, which is darkness.]

ULT **the gloom of darkness**
UST the darkness of hell

Here, Peter uses **gloom** and **darkness** to refer to hell. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this directly. Alternate translation: [for whom God has reserved the gloom of darkness of hell]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
springs	springs

2 Peter 2:18

ULT	UST
For, speaking arrogant things of vanity, they entice by lusts of the flesh, by licentious acts, the ones barely escaping from the ones living in error,	*This is true because they persuade people to sin who have recently become believers and stopped doing what wicked unbelievers do. These false teachers do this by speaking proud words that are not worth anything. They persuade these people to sin by doing whatever their sinful natures want to do.*

ULT **For**
UST This is true because

Here, **For** indicates the reason why the false teachers are reserved for punishment in the gloom of darkness, as mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [This is so because]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **speaking arrogant things of vanity**
UST These false teachers do this by speaking proud words that are not worth anything

This clause indicates the means by which the false teachers entice others to sin. Alternate translation: [by means of speaking arrogant things of vanity]

ULT **arrogant things of vanity**
UST proud words that are not worth anything

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **arrogant** speech that is characterized by **vanity**. Alternate translation: [vain, arrogant things] or [vain and arrogant things]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **of vanity**
UST that are not worth anything

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **vanity** with an adjective, such as “vain.”
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **they entice by lusts of the flesh**
UST they persuade … to sin … They persuade these people to sin by doing whatever their sinful natures want to do

Here, the pronoun **they** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these false teachers entice by the lusts of the flesh]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **by lusts of the flesh**
UST They persuade these people to sin by doing whatever their sinful natures want to do

Here, **flesh** is used to refer to a person's sinful nature. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state the literal meaning for the metaphor. Alternate translation: [by the lusts of their sinful natures]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by licentious acts**
UST They persuade these people to sin by doing whatever their sinful natures want to do

Here, **licentious acts** refers to immoral sexual actions that demonstrate a lack of self-control. See how you translated this term in 2:2. Alternate translation: [uncontrolled sensual acts]

ULT **the ones barely escaping from the ones living in error**
UST people … who have recently {become believers and} stopped doing what wicked unbelievers do

Here, Peter speaks of people who recently became believers as **those barely escaping** from sinful humanity. He also refers to unbelievers who still live according to their sinful desires as **those living in error**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [people who recently ceased living sinfully as other people do]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
arrogant	proud words
vanity	that are not worth anything
lusts	They persuade these people to sin by doing whatever their sinful natures want to do
error	people … who have recently {become believers and} stopped doing what wicked unbelievers do

2 Peter 2:19

ULT	UST
promising freedom to them, while themselves being slaves of destruction. (For by what someone has been overcome, by this he has been enslaved.)	*They also do this by telling their listeners that they are free to do whatever they want while, at the same time, they themselves are controlled by their sinful desires that will destroy them. This is true because the thing that overpowers a person's will takes control of that person.*

ULT **promising freedom to them**
UST They also do this by telling their listeners that they are free to do whatever they want

This clause refers to another means by which the false teachers enticed their followers, continuing from the previous verse. Alternate translation: [They also entice them by promising freedom to them]

ULT **promising freedom to them**
UST They also do this by telling their listeners that they are free to do whatever they want

Here, **freedom** is a metaphor for the ability to live exactly as one wants. Alternate translation: [promising to give them the ability to live exactly as they want to live]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **promising freedom to them**
UST They also do this by telling their listeners that they are free to do whatever they want

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to those people who are deceived by the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [promising freedom to those whom they deceive]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **while themselves being slaves of destruction**
UST while, at the same time, they themselves are controlled {by their sinful desires} that will destroy them

Peter uses the word **themselves** here to emphasize the irony of spiritually enslaved people promising spiritual freedom to others. Alternate translation: [while they themselves are slaves of destruction]
Support Reference: Reflexive Pronouns

ULT **slaves**
UST while, at the same time … are controlled by their sinful desires

Peter speaks of people who live sinfully as if they were **slaves** to sin who need to escape from their captivity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor as a simile. Alternate translation: [like slaves]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **slaves of destruction**
UST while, at the same time … are controlled {by their sinful desires} that will destroy them

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **slaves** that are characterized by **destruction**. Alternate translation: [slaves that will be destroyed]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **For by what someone has been overcome, by this he has been enslaved**
UST This is true because the thing that overpowers a person's will takes control of that person

Peter speaks of a person as being **enslaved** when anything has control over that person, he speaks of that thing as the master of that person. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly or as a simile. Alternate translation: [For if a person is overpowered by something, that person becomes controlled by that thing] or [For if a person is overpowered by something, that person becomes like a slave to that thing]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **For by what someone has been overcome, by this he has been enslaved**
UST This is true because the thing that overpowers a person's will takes control of that person

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this passive sentence with an active form. Alternate translation: [For if something overpowers a person, that thing enslaves that person]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
freedom	free
promising	They also do this by telling
slaves	while, at the same time … are controlled by their sinful desires
enslaved	This is true because the thing that overpowers a person's will takes control of that person

2 Peter 2:20

ULT	UST
For if, having escaped the defilements of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, but, having been entangled again, they have been overcome by these things, for them the last things have become worse than the first things.	*And if they have stopped doing the things that defile sinful human society by knowing the one who rules over us and saves us, Jesus the Messiah, but those defiling things began to control them again, then their situation is worse now than it was at first.*

ULT **For**
UST And

Here, **For** could refer to: (1) another explanation of Peter's statement "themselves being slaves of destruction" in the previous verse, (2) a transition from what Peter said in the previous verse to what he is going to say in this verse. Here, **For** does not indicate the reason or result of what was said in the previous verse. Alternate translation, as in the UST: [And]

ULT **if, having escaped the defilements of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, but, having been entangled again, they have been overcome by these things, for them the last things have become worse than the first things**
UST if they have stopped doing the things that defile sinful human society by knowing the one who rules over us and saves us, Jesus the Messiah, but those {defiling things} {began to} control them again, {then} their situation is worse now than {it was} at first

Peter is speaking as if this were a hypothetical possibility, but he means that it is actually true. If your language does not state something as a condition if it is certain or true, and if your readers might think that what Peter is saying is not certain, then you could translate his words as an affirmative statement. Alternate translation: [they have escaped the impurities of the world through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ, but having become entangled and overcome by them again, the last has become worse for them than the first]
Support Reference: Connect — Factual Conditions

ULT **if, having escaped the defilements of the world**
UST if they have stopped doing the things that defile sinful human society

Using a similar metaphor to that in 2:18, here Peter speaks of believers as if they had been slaves to the **defilements** of the world and have **escaped** that captivity. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [if they have ceased living in the defiling manner of the world]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the defilements of the world**
UST the things that defile sinful human society

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **defilements** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [the things that sinful human society does to defile itself]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **the defilements of the world**
UST the things that defile sinful human society

Here, the **world** refers to human society, which has been corrupted by sin. Alternate translation: [the defiling practices of sinful human society]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **through the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ**
UST by knowing the one who rules over us and saves us, Jesus the Messiah

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **knowledge** with a verbal phrase. See how you translated similar phrases in 1:2. Alternate translation: [by knowing our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of our Lord and Savior**
UST the one who rules over us and saves us

Here, **our Lord** means "the person who is lord over us" or "the person who rules over us." The conjunction **and** indicates that **our** also applies to **Savior**, meaning "the person who saves us." Alternate translation: [of the person who rules over us and saves us]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **having been entangled again, they have been overcome by these things**
UST those {defiling things} {began to} control them again

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can supply the doer of the action from earlier in the verse. Alternate translation: [these things having entangled them again; these things have overcome them]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **having been entangled again**
UST began to control them again

Here, Peter speaks of people who seem to have been believers but have returned to living sinfully as if they have become **entangled** in a net. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [if they have begun to live sinfully again]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **by these things**
UST those defiling things

Here, the pronoun **these things** refers to "the defilements of the world." If it would be helpful to your readers, you could specify this in your translation. Alternate translation: [by these defilements of the world]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **for them**
UST began to control them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1 and discussed in 2:12–19. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **for them the last things have become worse than the first things**
> UST began to control them … then their situation is worse now than {it was} at first

Here, the adjectives **last** and **first** function as nouns. They are plural, and ULT supplies the noun **things** in each case to show that. If your language does not use adjectives in this way, you can supply a more specific singular noun. Alternate translation: [the final condition for them is worse than their original condition]

Support Reference: Nominal Adjectives

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
world	the things that defile sinful human society
knowledge	knowing
Lord	the one who rules over
Savior	saves us
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah

2 Peter 2:21

ULT	UST
For it was better for them not to know the way of righteousness than, having known it, to turn away from the holy commandment that has been delivered to them.	*This is because it would have been better for them if they had never learned how to live in the way that pleases God than to learn this way and reject God's holy commands that the apostles taught them.*

ULT **For**
UST This is because

Here, **For** indicates the reason why the last condition of the false teachers was worse than their first condition, as mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [This is so because]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **for them**
UST for them

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [for these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the way of righteousness**
UST to live in the way that pleases God

Peter is using the possessive form to describe **the way** that is characterized by **righteousness**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a phrase to explain it. Alternate translation: [the righteous way]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **the way of righteousness**
UST to live in the way that pleases God

Peter speaks of life as a **way** or path. This phrase refers to the way of living life that is right and pleasing to the Lord. Peter may also be using it here to refer specifically to the Christian faith, similar to his use of "the way of truth" in 2:2 and "the straight way" in 2:15. Alternate translation: [the manner of living that pleases the Lord]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **having known it**
UST to learn this way

This clause indicates that the next clause describes an event that happened after the event of this clause. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [after having known it]

ULT **to turn away from the holy commandment**
UST and reject {God's} holy commands that {the apostles} taught them

Here, **to turn away from** is a metaphor that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: [to stop obeying the holy commandment]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **the holy commandment that has been delivered**
> UST God's holy commands that {the apostles} taught them

Peter uses **the holy commandment** to speak of the commands of God in general. He is not referring to one specific **commandment**. These commands were **delivered** by the apostles to the believers. Alternate translation: [the holy commands that were delivered]

Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

> ULT **the holy commandment that has been delivered**
> UST God's holy commands that {the apostles} taught them

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the ideas behind the abstract noun **commandment** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [what God commanded and the apostles delivered]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the holy commandment that has been delivered to them**
> UST God's holy commands that {the apostles} taught them

If your language does not use this passive form, you can express this with an active form, and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: [the holy commandment that the apostles delivered to them]

Support Reference: Active or Passive

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
know	if they had … learned how
righteousness	to live in the way that pleases God
known	to learn this way
holy	holy

2 Peter 2:22

ULT	UST
This of the true proverb has happened to them: "A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig to the rolling of mud."	*This is a true proverb that describes what has happened to these false teachers: "They are like dogs that return to eat their own vomit," and, "They are like pigs that have washed themselves and then roll again in the mud."*

ULT **This of the true proverb has happened to them**
UST This is a true proverb {that describes} what has happened to these false teachers

Here, **This** refers to the **proverb** Peter states later in this verse. It does not refer back to a statement from the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could use a different expression. Alternate translation: [What this true proverb says has happened to them] or [This true proverb describes what happened to them]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **to them**
UST to these false teachers

Here, the pronoun **them** refers to the false teachers introduced in 2:1. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [to these false teachers]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **A dog returns to its own vomit, and a washed pig to the rolling of mud**
UST They are like dogs that return to eat their own vomit," and, "They are like pigs that have washed themselves and then roll again in the mud

Peter uses two proverbs to illustrate what the false teachers have done. These proverbs make a figurative comparison: Just as a dog returns to eat its own vomit and a washed pig rolls in the mud again, so these false teachers, who once stopped living a sinful life, have now gone back to living sinfully. Although they knew "the way of righteousness," they went back to doing the things that defile them morally and spiritually. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the meaning by translating these proverbs as similes. Alternate translation: [They are like dogs that eat their own vomit or like clean pigs that go back to rolling in the mud.]
Support Reference: Proverbs

ULT **A dog**
UST They are like dogs

A **dog** is an animal that is considered to be unclean and disgusting by Jews and many cultures of the Ancient Near East. Therefore, calling someone a **dog** was an insult. If dogs are unfamiliar to your culture and you have a different animal that is considered unclean and disgusting or whose name is used as an insult, you could use the name of this animal instead.
Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

ULT **a … pig**
UST They are like pigs

A **pig** is an animal that is considered to be unclean and disgusting by Jews and many cultures of the Ancient Near East. Therefore, calling someone a **pig** was an insult. If pigs are unfamiliar to your culture and you have a different animal that is considered unclean and disgusting or whose name is used as an insult, you could use the name of this animal instead.

Support Reference: Translate Unknowns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
proverb	proverb
pig	pigs

2 Peter 3

2 Peter 3 Introduction

2 Peter 3 Chapter Introduction

Structure and Formatting

1. Reminder that Jesus will return at the right time (3:1–13)
2. Concluding exhortation to live godly lives (3:14–17)

Religious and Cultural Concepts in This Chapter

Fire

People often use fire to destroy things or to make something pure by burning off the dirt and worthless parts. Therefore, when God punishes the wicked or purifies his people, that action is often associated with fire.

Day of the Lord

The exact time of the coming day of the Lord will come as a surprise to people. This is what the simile “like a thief in the night” means. Because of this, Christians are to be prepared at all times for the coming of the Lord. (See: day of the Lord, day of Yahweh; and Simile)

2 Peter 3:1

ULT	UST
Beloved ones, this is now a second letter I write to you, in which I arouse your pure mind in remembrance,	*Fellow believers whom I love, this letter that I am now writing to you is the second letter that I have written to you. I have written both of these letters to you to remind you of the things that your sincere minds already know.*

ULT **Beloved ones**
UST Fellow believers whom I love

Beloved ones refers here to those to whom Peter is writing, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this term explicitly. Alternate translation: [Beloved fellow believers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **in which**
UST I have written both of these letters to you

Here, **which** refers to both this letter and the previous letter that Peter had written to this group of believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could start a new sentence to say this explicitly. Alternate translation: [In both of these letters]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **I arouse your pure mind in remembrance**
UST to remind you of the things that your sincere minds already know

Here, Peter uses **arouse**, as if the minds of his readers are asleep, to refer to causing his readers to think about these things. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly. See how you translated this term in 1:13. Alternate translation: [to remind your sincere mind of these things so that you will think about them]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in remembrance**
UST to remind you of the things that your sincere minds already know

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **remembrance** in this phrase with a verb. See how you translated this term in 1:13. Alternate translation: [to remember]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **your pure mind**
UST to remind you of the things that your sincere minds already know

Although the word **pure** usually refers to something being uncontaminated or not mixed with something else, Peter uses it here to indicate that his readers have minds which have not been deceived by the false teachers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [your undeceived minds]
Support Reference: Metaphor

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Beloved	Fellow believers whom I love
mind	remind

2 Peter 3:2

ULT	UST
to remember the words spoken previously by the holy prophets and the command of the Lord and Savior through your apostles,	*I have written these letters in order to remind you of the prophecies that the holy prophets spoke a long time ago. I also want you to remember what the one who rules over us and saves us has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles whom we sent to you.*

ULT **to remember**
UST I have written these letters in order to remind you of

Here, Peter is stating a purpose for which he is writing this letter. Alternate translation (without a comma preceding): [that you should remember]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **the words spoken previously by the holy prophets**
UST the prophecies that the holy prophets spoke a long time ago

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [the words that the holy prophets spoke previously]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the words spoken previously**
UST the prophecies that … spoke a long time ago

Peter is using **words** here to describe the prophecies of the Old Testament prophets that were conveyed by using words, especially those prophecies about the future return of Christ. Alternate translation: [the prophecies spoken previously]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **by the holy prophets**
UST the holy prophets

Here, **prophets** refers to the Old Testament prophets whom Peter also referred to in 1:19–21. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [by the holy Old Testament prophets]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the command of the Lord and Savior through your apostles**
UST what the one who rules over us and saves us has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles {whom we sent to} you

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [the command of our Lord and Savior, which your apostles gave to you]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **the command of the Lord and Savior**
> UST what the one who rules over us and saves us has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles {whom we sent to} you

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **command** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [what our Lord and Savior commanded]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **the command of the Lord and Savior**
> UST what the one who rules over us and saves us has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles {whom we sent to} you

Peter uses **command** here to speak of the commands of Jesus in general. He is not referring to one specific command. These commands were delivered by the apostles to the believers. Alternate translation: [the commands of the Lord and Savior]
Support Reference: Generic Noun Phrases

> ULT **of the Lord**
> UST the one who rules over us

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **Lord** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [the person who rules]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **Savior**
> UST saves us

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **Savior** with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [the person who saves]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **through your apostles**
> UST what … has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles {whom we sent to} you

This phrase indicates the means by which **the command of the Lord and Savior** was given to Peter's readers. Alternate translation: [by means of your apostles]

> ULT **through your apostles**
> UST what … has commanded you through the teaching of the apostles {whom we sent to} you

Here, **your apostles** could refer to: (1) the apostles who proclaimed the teachings of Christ to Peter's readers or ministered to them in some way. Alternate translation: [the apostles who serve you]; or (2) all apostles, who belong to all Christians. Alternate translation: [the apostles of us all]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	holy
prophets	prophets
apostles	apostles
Lord	the one who rules over us
Savior	saves us

2 Peter 3:3

ULT	UST
knowing this first, that mockers will come with mockery in the last days, going according to their own lusts,	*It is important for you to understand that people who mock will come and mock the return of Jesus during the time shortly before Jesus returns. Those people will do whatever they want to do.*

ULT **knowing this first**
UST It is important for you to understand

Peter uses **first** here to refer to the degree of importance. It does not to refer to order in time. See how you translated this in 1:20. Alternate translation: [Most importantly, you must understand]

ULT **knowing this first**
UST It is important for you to understand

Peter is using a statement to give an instruction. If it would be helpful in your language, you could indicate this by translating it as a command. If you do so, it might be helpful to start a new sentence here. See how you translated this in 1:20. Alternate translation: [Above all, know this]
Support Reference: Statements — Other Uses

ULT **mockers will come with mockery**
UST people who mock will come and mock the return of Jesus

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **mockery** with a verb. Alternate translation: [mockers will come and mock]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **going according to their own lusts**
UST Those people will do whatever they want to do

Here, Peter uses **going** to refer to habitually doing something, like someone who walks toward something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor literally. Alternate translation: [those habitually living according to their own lusts]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **going according to their own lusts**
UST Those people will do whatever they want to do

Here, **lusts** refers to sinful desires that are opposed to God's will. Alternate translation: [living according to their own sinful desires]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
knowing	It is important for you to understand
days	during the time shortly before Jesus returns
last days	during the time shortly before Jesus returns
mockery	mock
mockers	mock
lusts	Those people will do whatever they want to do

2 Peter 3:4

ULT	UST
and saying, "Where is the promise of his coming? For since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue in the same way from the beginning of creation."	*These mockers will say, "Jesus' promise to return is not true! We know this because since Israel's ancestors died, everything has remained the same. It has been the same way since God created everything!"*

ULT **and saying**
UST These mockers will say

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotations in your language. Alternate translation: [and they will say]
Support Reference: Quotations and Quote Margins

ULT **Where is the promise of his coming**
UST Jesus' promise to return is not true

The mockers ask this rhetorical question to emphasize that they do not believe that Jesus will return. Alternate translation: [There is no promise of his coming!] or [The promise of his coming is not true!]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **Where is the promise of his coming**
UST Jesus' promise to return is not true

Here, **Where** is used to ask what has happened to the promise. The mockers are not asking for the location of something. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this idiom by translating this plainly. Alternate translation: [What happened to the promise of his coming?] or [What has come about regarding the promise of his coming?]
Support Reference: Idiom

ULT **Where is the promise of his coming**
UST Jesus' promise to return is not true

Here, **promise** refers to the fulfillment of the promise that Jesus will return. Alternate translation: [Where is the fulfillment of the promise of his coming?]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **the promise of his coming**
UST Jesus' promise to return is not true

Here, the pronoun **his** refers to Jesus. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the promise of Jesus' coming]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **of his coming**
UST Jesus' promise to return is not true

Here, **his coming** refers to the return of the Lord Jesus to earth. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the return of Jesus to earth]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **For since the fathers fell asleep**
UST We know this because since Israel's ancestors died

Here, **the fathers** is used. It could refer to: (1) the Old Testament ancestors of the Israelites, often called "the patriarchs." Alternate translation: [For since Israel's patriarchs fell asleep]; or (2) those leaders of the first generation of Christians who had died by the time Peter wrote this letter. Alternate translation: [For since the first Christian leaders fell asleep]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **the fathers fell asleep**
UST Israel's ancestors died

Here, **fell asleep** is a euphemism meaning they died. You could either use a similar euphemism for death in your language or say this plainly. Alternate translation: [the fathers died]
Support Reference: Euphemism

ULT **all things continue in the same way from the beginning of creation**
UST everything has remained the same. It has been the same way since God created everything

Here, **all things** is an exaggeration the mockers use to argue that nothing in the world has ever changed, so it cannot be true that Jesus will return.
Support Reference: Hyperbole

ULT **from the beginning of creation**
UST It has been the same way since God created everything

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **creation** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [since God created the world]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
promise	promise
creation	created

2 Peter 3:5

ULT	UST
For this is hidden from them willingly, that the heavens existed long ago, and the earth had been formed out of water and through water by the word of God,	*They will say this because they deliberately ignore that God caused the heavens to exist a long time ago by commanding it to be so, and he caused the earth to come out from water and up through water by commanding it to be so.*

ULT **For this is hidden {from} them willingly**
UST They will say this because they deliberately ignore

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [For they willingly hide this from themselves]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **willingly, that the heavens existed long ago**
UST They will say this because they deliberately ignore that God caused the heavens to exist a long time ago

Peter is leaving out some of the words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the end of the verse. Alternate translation: [that the heavens existed long ago by the word of God]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **the earth had been formed out of water and through water by the word of God**
UST by commanding it to be so … he caused the earth to come out from water and up through water by commanding it to be so

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [the word of God formed the earth out of water and through water]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **had been formed out of water and through water**
UST he caused … to come out from water and up through water by commanding it to be so

This clause refers to God causing the land to come up **out of** and **through** the **water**, gathering the bodies of water together to make the land appear.

ULT **by the word of God**
UST by commanding it to be so

Here, **the word of God** refers to the God's specific commands by which the earth was created. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [by the commands of God]
Support Reference: Metonymy

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heavens
earth	earth
God	by commanding it to be so

2 Peter 3:6

ULT	UST
through which the world at that time perished, having been flooded by water.	*And God, by his command and by water, destroyed the world that existed at that time. He did so by flooding the earth with water.*

ULT **through which**
UST by his command and by water

Here, **which** refers both to God's word and water. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [through the word of God and water]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **having been flooded by water**
UST He did so by flooding the earth with water

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who did the action. You may need to begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: [God flooded the world with water]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the world at that time**
UST the world that existed at that time

Here, **at that time** refers to the time when the world existed before the flood. It does not refer to the exact time when the universe was created. Alternate translation: [the world that existed then]

ULT **having been flooded by water**
UST He did so by flooding the earth with water

This phrase indicates the means by which the ancient world was destroyed. Alternate translation: [by having been flooded by water]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
time	time
world	world
flooded	flooding
perished	And God … destroyed

2 Peter 3:7

ULT	UST
But the present heavens and the earth, by the same word, are having been reserved for fire, being kept for a day of judgment and destruction of the ungodly men.	*However, God, by the same command, has set apart the heavens and the earth that exist now for fire. God is keeping them for the time when he will judge and destroy people who act wickedly.*

ULT **But the present heavens and the earth**
UST However … the heavens and the earth that exist now

Here, **But** indicates that Peter is contrasting the past destruction of the ancient world he mentioned in the previous verse with the future destruction of the present world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this contrast explicitly. Alternate translation: [In contrast, the present heavens and the earth]
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **the present heavens and the earth, by the same word, are having been reserved for fire**
UST However, God, by the same command, has set apart the heavens and the earth that exist now for fire

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who has done the action. Alternate translation: [God, by that same word, has reserved the present heavens and the earth for fire]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **by the same word**
UST by the same command

Here, **word** refers to "the word of God," which Peter said in 3:5–6 was the means by which the heavens and earth were created and a flood destroyed the world. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [by the same word of God]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **for fire**
UST for fire

Here, **for** indicates the purpose for which God has been reserving the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: [for the purpose of fire]
Support Reference: Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

ULT **for fire**
UST for fire

Here, Peter uses **fire** to refer to what fire does, which is burn. Alternate translation: [for burning with fire]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **being kept for a day of judgment**
UST God is keeping them for the time when he will judge

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who is doing the action. It might also be helpful to begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: [God is keeping them for the day of judgment]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **for a day of judgment**
UST for the time when he will judge

Here, **for** could refer to: (1) the purpose for which God is keeping the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: [for the purpose of the day of judgment]; or (2) the point in time up to which God is keeping the present heavens and earth. Alternate translation: [until the day of judgment]

ULT **a day of judgment and destruction of the ungodly men**
UST the time when he will judge and destroy people who act wickedly

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **judgment** and **destruction** by stating the ideas behind them with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: [the day when God judges mankind and destroys the ungodly men]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of the ungodly men**
UST people who act wickedly

Although the term **men** is masculine, Peter is using the word here in a generic sense that includes both men and women. Alternate translation: [of the ungodly people]
Support Reference: When Masculine Words Include Women

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heavens
earth	earth
day	the time when
judgment	judge
ungodly	people who act wickedly

2 Peter 3:8

ULT	UST
But let this one thing not be hidden from you, beloved ones, that one day with the Lord is like 1, 000 years, and 1, 000 years are like one day.	*Fellow believers whom I love, do not ignore this one truth: from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time!*

ULT **let this one thing not be hidden {from} you**
UST Fellow believers whom I love, do not ignore this one truth

Alternate translation: [do not fail to understand this one fact] or [do not ignore this one thing]

ULT **that one day with the Lord {is} like 1,000 years**
UST from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time

Here, **with the Lord** means "in the judgment of the Lord." Alternate translation: [that from the Lord's point of view, one day is like a thousand years]

ULT **one day with the Lord {is} like 1,000 years, and 1,000 years {are} like one day**
UST from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The repetition is used to emphasize that God does not perceive of time the same way that humans do. What might seem to be a short or long time for people would not seem so for God. If it would be helpful in your language, you could combine these phrases. Alternate translation: [one day and 1,000 years are alike for the Lord]
Support Reference: Doublet

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beloved	Fellow believers whom I love
day	from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time
Lord	from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time
years	from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time
years	from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time
day	from God's perspective a short period of time is no different from a long period of time

2 Peter 3:9

ULT	UST
The Lord does not delay concerning the promise, as some consider delay, but is patient toward you, not wanting any to perish, but all to move on to repentance.	*The Lord is not acting slowly to fulfill his promise of Jesus' return. Some people think that this is so. On the contrary, God is being patient with you, because he does not want any of you to be punished eternally. Rather, he wants everyone to repent.*

ULT **The Lord does not delay {concerning} the promise**
UST The Lord is not acting slowly to fulfill his promise of Jesus' return

Here, **promise** refers to the fulfillment of the **promise** that Jesus will return. See how you translated it in 3:4. Alternate translation: [The Lord does not delay to fulfill his promise]
Support Reference: Metonymy

ULT **as some consider delay**
UST Some people think that this is so

Here, **some** refers to the "mockers" introduced in 3:3 and anyone else who believed that the Lord is slow to fulfill his promises, because Jesus had not yet returned. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [as some, such as these mockers, consider slowness]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **but is patient toward you**
UST On the contrary, God is being patient with you

Peter is leaving out a word that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. This word can be supplied from the beginning of the verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state explicitly who is the one being **patient** and begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: [But God is patient toward you]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

ULT **not wanting any to perish**
UST because he does not want any of you to be punished eternally

This clause indicates the reason why God is delaying the return of Jesus. Alternate translation: [because he does not want any to perish]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **but all to move on to repentance**
UST Rather, he wants everyone to repent

Peter is leaving out words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the previous clause. Alternate translation: [but he wants all to move on to repentance]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

> ULT **but all to move on to repentance**
> UST Rather, he wants everyone to repent

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **repentance** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [but all to repent]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
promise	promise
patient	patient
perish	to be punished eternally
repentance	repent

2 Peter 3:10

ULT	UST
But the day of the Lord will come as a thief, in which the heavens will pass away with a loud noise, and the elements will be destroyed, being burned up, and the earth and the deeds in it will be found.	*In contrast to what those mockers say, the time when the Lord returns will come unexpectedly. At that time there will be a great roaring sound and the heavens will cease to exist. God will also destroy the basic elements of nature by fire. Then God will reveal the earth and everything that has been done in it.*

ULT **But**
UST In contrast to what those mockers say

Here, **But** indicates a contrast between what the mockers believed about God and what God will really do. Although the Lord is being patient and wants people to repent, he will indeed return and bring judgment.
Support Reference: Connect — Contrast Relationship

ULT **the day of the Lord will come as a thief**
UST the time when the Lord returns will come unexpectedly

Peter speaks of the **day** when God will judge everyone as if it were a **thief** who will come unexpectedly and take people by surprise. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this simile plainly. Alternate translation: [the day of the Lord will come unexpectedly]
Support Reference: Simile

ULT **a thief, in which**
UST unexpectedly. At that time

Here, **which** refers to “the day of the Lord”. If it would be helpful for your readers, you could express this explicitly and begin a new sentence. Alternate translation: [a thief. In the day of the Lord]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **the elements will be destroyed**
UST God will … destroy the basic elements of nature

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in an active form and you can indicate who will do the action. Alternate translation: [God will destroy the elements]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the elements will be destroyed**
UST God will … destroy the basic elements of nature

Here, **elements** could refer to: (1) the basic elements that make up the natural universe. Alternate translation: [the components of nature will be destroyed]; or (2) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars. Alternate translation: [the heavenly bodies will be destroyed]

ULT **and the elements will be destroyed, being burned up**
UST God will also destroy the basic elements of nature by fire

Here, **being burned up** refers to the means by which the elements will be destroyed. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [and the elements will be destroyed by means of burning] or [and the elements will be destroyed by means of fire]

ULT **the earth and the deeds in it will be found**
UST God will reveal the earth and everything that has been done in it

God will see all the **earth** and all the **deeds** of everyone, and he will then judge everything. If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active terms. Alternate translation: [God will find the earth and the deeds in it]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the earth and the deeds in it will be found**
UST God will reveal the earth and everything that has been done in it

Here, **deeds** refers to the actions of people on the earth. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [the earth and what people have done in it will be found]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **the earth and the deeds in it will be found**
UST God will reveal the earth and everything that has been done in it

Here, **found** indicates that the removal of the heavens and elements will leave the earth and what has been done on it exposed for God to see and judge. Alternate translation: [the earth and the deeds in it will be exposed] or [the earth and the deeds in it will be revealed]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
day	the time when … returns
Lord	Lord
day of the Lord	the time when the Lord returns
heavens	heavens
earth	earth

2 Peter 3:11

ULT	UST
All of these things being thus destroyed, of what sort is it necessary for you to be in holy behaviors and godliness,	*Since God will destroy all these things I have just mentioned in the way I have described, you must certainly behave in a holy manner and do what pleases God.*

ULT **All of these things being thus destroyed**
UST Since God will destroy all these things {I have just mentioned} in the way I have described

This clause indicates the reason for the expected result that follows in the rest of the verse. Peter tells his readers that God's future destruction of heaven and earth should result in them living holy and godly lives. Alternate translation: [Because of all of these things being thus destroyed]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **All of these things being thus destroyed**
UST Since God will destroy all these things {I have just mentioned} in the way I have described

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who will do the action. Alternate translation: [Since God will thus destroy all of these things]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **of these things**
UST these things I have just mentioned

Here, **these things** refers to the heavens, the elements, and the earth mentioned in the previous verse. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these things that I have just described]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **of what sort is it necessary for you to be**
UST you must certainly

Peter is using the question form for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this emphasis by translating his words as a statement or an exclamation and communicate the emphasis in another way. If it you translate these words as a statement, then you will need to change the question mark at the end of the next verse into a period. Alternate translation: [it is certainly necessary for you to be]
Support Reference: Rhetorical Question

ULT **in holy behaviors and godliness**
UST behave in a holy manner and do what pleases God

Peter is leaving out words that this clause would need in many languages in order to be complete. These words can be supplied from the context. Alternate translation: [living with holy behaviors and godly acts]
Support Reference: Ellipsis

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
holy	holy
godliness	do what pleases God

2 Peter 3:12

ULT	UST
waiting for and hastening the coming of the day of God, because of which the heavens, being set on fire, will be destroyed, and the elements, being burned up by heat, will be melted?	*Do these things while expecting and trying to speed up the time of Jesus' return. On account of that day, God will destroy the heavens with fire and melt the basic elements of nature with heat.*

ULT **waiting for and hastening**
UST Do these things while expecting and trying to speed up

Here, **waiting for and hastening** are two things Peter wanted his readers to do while also living holy and godly lives, as stated in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [while expecting and hastening]

ULT **because of which**
UST On account of that day

Here, **which** refers to "the day of God" from the previous clause. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [because of that day]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **being set on fire**
UST with fire

This phrase indicates the means by which the heavens will be destroyed. Alternate translation: [by means of being set on fire]

ULT **the heavens, being set on fire, will be destroyed**
UST God will destroy the heavens with fire

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and say who will do the action. Alternate translation: [God will destroy the heavens with fire]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **the elements, being burned up by heat, will be melted**
UST melt the basic elements of nature with heat

Here, **elements** could refer to: (1) the basic elements that make up the natural universe. Alternate translation: [the components of nature will be destroyed by heat]; or (2) the heavenly bodies, such as the sun, moon, and stars. Alternate translation: [the heavenly bodies will be destroyed by heat] See how you translated this in 3:10.

ULT **being burned up by heat**
UST with heat

This phrase indicates the means by which the heavens will be destroyed. Alternate translation: [by means of being burned up by heat]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
God	the time of Jesus' return
day	the time of Jesus' return
of the day of God	the time of Jesus' return
heavens	heavens

2 Peter 3:13

ULT	UST
But new heavens and a new earth, according to his promise, we are waiting for, in which righteousness dwells.	*Although all those events will happen, we are expecting the new heavens and new earth that God has promised to create. Everyone will be righteous in that new universe.*

ULT **new heavens and a new earth, according to his promise, we are waiting for**
UST we are expecting the new heavens and new earth that God has promised to create

Peter put the direct object of the main verb at the front of this sentence for emphasis. If your language uses a similar construction for emphasis, it would be appropriate to have it here in your translation. But if this construction would be confusing in your language, you could express this emphasis in another way and change the structure of the sentence. Alternate translation: [according to his promise, we are waiting for new heavens and a new earth]
Support Reference: Information Structure

ULT **according to his promise**
UST that God has promised to create

Here, the pronoun **his** could refer to: (1) God. Alternate translation: [according to God's promise]; or (2) Jesus. Alternate translation: [according to Jesus' promise]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **his promise**
UST that God has promised to create

Here, **promise** could refer to: (1) God's promise to create a new heavens and earth, as promised in Isaiah 65:17 and Isaiah 66:22. Alternate translation: [his promise of new heavens and a new earth]; or (2) the promise of Jesus' second coming, as in 3:4. Alternate translation: [his promise of the return of Jesus]

ULT **in which righteousness dwells**
UST Everyone will be righteous in that new universe

Here, **righteousness** is spoken of as though it were a person who could dwell somewhere. If this might be confusing for your readers, you could express this meaning plainly. Alternate translation: [in which righteousness exists]
Support Reference: Personification

ULT **in which righteousness dwells**
UST Everyone will be righteous in that new universe

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **righteousness** by translating the idea behind it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [in which everyone is righteous] or [in which everyone does what is right]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
heavens	heavens
earth	earth
promise	promised
righteousness	righteous

2 Peter 3:14

ULT	UST
Therefore, beloved ones, while waiting for these things, be diligent to be found spotless and blameless by him, in peace.	*Because this is true, fellow believers whom I love, while you are waiting for these things to happen, do your best to make sure that Jesus will see that you are not living sinfully and that you are at peace with God.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST Because this is true

Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has just said. He is referring specifically to the discussion of the coming day of the Lord given in 3:10–13. Alternate translation: [Because of these reasons]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **beloved ones**
UST fellow believers whom I love

Here, **beloved ones** refers to those whom Peter is writing to, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. See how you translated this in 3:1. Alternate translation: [beloved fellow believers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **these things**
UST these things to happen

Here, **these things** refers back to the events related to the coming day of the Lord, which Peter described in 3:10–13. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [these things that will happen on the day of the Lord]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **be diligent to be found spotless and blameless by him**
UST do your best to make sure that Jesus will see that you are not living sinfully

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in an active form. Alternate translation: [be diligent so that God will find you spotless and blameless]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

ULT **spotless and blameless**
UST that you are not living sinfully

The words **spotless** and **blameless** share similar meanings. Peter is using them together for emphasis. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this connection by translating them with a single expression. Alternate translation: [completely pure]
Support Reference: Doublet

ULT **by him**
UST to make sure that Jesus will see

Here, the pronoun **him** could refer to: (1) Jesus. Alternate translation: [by Jesus]; or (2) God. Alternate translation: [by God]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

> ULT **in peace**
> UST and that you are at peace with God

Here, **in peace** could refer to: (1) having peace with God. Alternate translation, as in the UST: [at peace with God]; or (2) feeling peace in one's heart. Alternate translation: [with peace in your heart]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beloved	fellow believers whom I love
peace	peace

2 Peter 3:15

ULT	UST
And consider the patience of our Lord to be salvation, just as also our beloved brother Paul wrote to you according to the wisdom having been given to him,	*And think about this: Our Lord Jesus is patient so that more people can be saved. Paul, a fellow believer whom we love, has also said this when he wrote to you. He wrote using the wisdom that God gave him.*

ULT **consider the patience of our Lord {to be} salvation**
UST think about this: Our Lord Jesus is patient so that more people can be saved

Because the Lord is patient, the day of judgment has not yet happened. This gives people an opportunity to repent and be saved, as Peter explained in 3:9. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [consider the patience of our Lord as an opportunity to repent and be saved]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **consider the patience of our Lord {to be} salvation**
UST think about this: Our Lord Jesus is patient so that more people can be saved

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract nouns **patience** and **salvation** by translating the ideas behind them with equivalent expressions. Alternate translation: [that our Lord is patient to save people]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to be salvation**
UST so that more people can be saved

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **salvation** by translating the idea behind it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [to save people]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **our beloved brother Paul**
UST Paul, a fellow believer whom we love

Peter is using the term **brother** to refer to Paul as a fellow believer in Jesus. Alternate translation: [our beloved fellow Christian brother Paul]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **according to the wisdom having been given to him**
UST He wrote using the wisdom that God gave him

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form and you can state who did the action. Alternate translation: [according to the wisdom that God gave to him]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **according to the wisdom having been given to him**
> UST He wrote using the wisdom that God gave him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **wisdom** by translating the idea behind it with an adjective, such as “wise.” Alternate translation: [according to the wise words having been given to him]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
Lord	Lord
patience	patient
salvation	saved
beloved	whom we love
Paul	Paul
wisdom	wisdom

2 Peter 3:16

ULT	UST
as also in all the letters, speaking in them about these things, in which are some difficult to understand things, which the ignorant and unstable distort, as also the other scriptures, to their own destruction.	*In all the letters that Paul wrote, he also writes about these things that I have just mentioned. In his letters are also some teachings that are difficult to understand. People who lack knowledge and stability misinterpret those difficult teachings, as well as the rest of the scriptures. God will punish them as a result.*

ULT **in all the letters**
UST In all the letters that Paul wrote, he … writes

Here, the context suggests that Paul is the author of **the letters**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [in all Paul's letters]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **speaking in them about these things**
UST In all the letters that Paul wrote, he … writes about these things that I have just mentioned

Here, **these things** could refer to: (1) the events related to the day of the Lord discussed in 3:10–13 and called "these things" in 3:14. Alternate translation: [these things that will happen on the day of the Lord]; or (2) the need to live godly lives and consider that God's patience is for saving people, as discussed in 3:14–15. Alternate translation: [these things I have just said about living blamelessly and about God's patience]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **which the ignorant and unstable distort**
UST People who lack knowledge and stability misinterpret those difficult teachings

Here, **which** refers to the things in Paul's letters that are difficult to understand. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this phrase explicitly and start a new sentence. Alternate translation: [The ignorant and unstable ones distort these difficult things found in Paul's letters]
Support Reference: Pronouns — When to Use Them

ULT **which the ignorant and unstable distort**
UST People who lack knowledge and stability misinterpret those difficult teachings

Here, **distort** is used to describe changing the meaning of a statement in order to give a false meaning like twisting something so that it changes shape. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [which the ignorant and unstable ones interpret falsely]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **as also the other scriptures**
UST as well as the rest of the scriptures

Here, **the other scriptures** refers to both the entire Old Testament and the New Testament texts that had been written by the time Peter wrote this letter. If it would be helpful to your readers, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [as also the other authoritative scriptures]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

> ULT **to their own destruction**
> UST God will punish them as a result

Here, **to** indicates that this clause provides the result of the "ignorant and unstable ones" falsely interpreting the scriptures. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [resulting in their own destruction]

Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **to their own destruction**
> UST God will punish them as a result

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **destruction** with a verbal phrase. Alternate translation: [so that they will be destroyed]

Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
scriptures	scriptures

2 Peter 3:17

ULT	UST
Therefore, you beloved ones, knowing beforehand, guard yourselves, so that you might not lose your own steadfastness, having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones.	*Because all these things are true, fellow believers whom I love, and because you already know about these things, keep yourselves from ceasing to live faithfully because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning.*

ULT **Therefore**
UST Because all these things are true

Here, Peter uses **Therefore** to introduce a description of what his readers should do as a result of what he has said, which could be: (1) the destruction of those who falsely interpret the scriptures mentioned in the previous verse. Alternate translation: [Because those who falsely interpret the Scriptures will be destroyed]; or (2) the previous content of the entire letter, especially the sure destruction of the false teachers. Alternate translation: [Because of all these things I have told you]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **beloved ones**
UST fellow believers whom I love

Here, **beloved ones** refers to those whom Peter is writing to, which can be extended to all believers. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. See how you translated this in 3:1 and 3:14. Alternate translation: [beloved fellow believers]
Support Reference: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

ULT **knowing beforehand**
UST and because … already know about these things

Here, Peter is giving the reason why his readers should heed his command in the next phrase. Alternate translation: [since you know beforehand]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

ULT **so that you might not lose your own steadfastness**
UST from ceasing to live faithfully because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

Here, Peter speaks of **steadfastness** as if it were a possession that believers could **lose**. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [so that you might not stop being steadfast]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **so that you might not lose your own steadfastness**
UST from ceasing to live faithfully because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the idea behind the abstract noun **steadfastness** with the adjective “steadfast.” Alternate translation: [so that you might not lose your own steadfast faith]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

> ULT **having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones**
> UST because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

This clause indicates the reason why people might lose their own steadfastness. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this explicitly. Alternate translation: [because of being led astray by the error of the lawless ones]
Support Reference: Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

> ULT **having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones**
> UST because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

If your language does not use this passive form, you can state this in active form. Alternate translation: [the error of the lawless ones having led you astray]
Support Reference: Active or Passive

> ULT **having been led astray by the error of the lawless ones**
> UST because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

Here, Peter uses **led astray** to describe people being deceived into living wickedly by false teachers as if they had been led away from the straight path. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this metaphor by translating this plainly. Alternate translation: [having been deceived into living wickedly by the error of the lawless ones]
Support Reference: Metaphor

> ULT **by the error of the lawless ones**
> UST because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning

This phrase indicates the means by which one might be led astray. Alternate translation: [by means of the error of the lawless ones]

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
beloved	fellow believers whom I love
knowing beforehand	and because … already know about these things
lawless	because you let the wrong teaching of those who live like there is no law deceive you into sinning
by the error	deceive

2 Peter 3:18

ULT	UST
But grow in grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be the glory both now and to the day of the age. Amen!	*Rather, live in such a manner that you experience more and more of the kind acts of the one who rules over us and saves us, Jesus the Messiah. And live in such a manner that you know more and more about him. I pray that everyone will glorify Jesus both at this time and forever. May this truly be so!*

ULT **grow in grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ**
UST live in such a manner that you experience more and more of the kind acts of the one who rules over us and saves us, Jesus the Messiah. And live in such a manner that you know more and more about him

Here, **grow** is used to express experiencing or having something in increasing amounts. If it would be helpful in your language, you could state this metaphor plainly. Alternate translation: [have more and more of the grace and knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ]
Support Reference: Metaphor

ULT **in grace and knowledge**
UST the kind acts of … And live in such a manner that you know more and more about him

Here, **in** means "with reference to." Alternate translation: [with reference to the grace and knowledge]

ULT **grace**
UST the kind acts of

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **grace** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [kind acts]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **knowledge**
UST live in such a manner that you know more and more about him

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **knowledge** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [what you know]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **of our Lord and Savior**
UST the one who rules over us and saves us

Here, **our Lord** means "the person who is lord over us" or "the person who rules over us." The conjunction and indicates that our also applies to **Savior**, meaning "the person who saves us." If you include both of these phrases in your translation, then you will also need to put a comma at the end of the second phrase. Alternate translation: [of the person who rules over us and saves us,]
Support Reference: Possession

ULT **To him {be} the glory**
UST I pray that everyone will glorify Jesus

If it would be helpful in your language, you could express the abstract noun **glory** by translating it with an equivalent expression. Alternate translation: [May everyone glorify him]
Support Reference: Abstract Nouns

ULT **to the day of the age**
UST forever

Here, **to the day of the age** is an idiom that means "forever." If it would be helpful in your language, you could use an equivalent idiom or use plain language. Alternate translation: [to eternity] or [forever]
Support Reference: Idiom

TRANSLATION WORDS

ULT	UST
grace	the kind acts of
knowledge	know
Lord	the one who rules
Savior	saves us
Jesus	Jesus
Christ	Messiah
glory	glorify
day	forever
Amen	truly

Appendix: Translation Academy

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you." Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you."

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we." (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you." (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he," "she," "it," and "they." (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you."

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and used "his." He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "his." He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!" (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you." He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your."

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."
(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you."

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)
>
> > But David said to Saul, "**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?" (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)
>
> > Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?"
>
> So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)
>
> > So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:1

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example,

"What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

> From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

> He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

> … from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings … (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)
>
> > Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved** … Today God **has saved** the people in this house …

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:13 2 Peter 1:15 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:13 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:17 2 Peter 3:18 2 Peter 3:18 2 Peter 3:18

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

> Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
(3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)
>
> > **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)
>
> > It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> > It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)
>
> > He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:6 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:11 2 Peter 3:12 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:17

Statements — Other Uses

Description

Normally statements are used to give information. Sometimes they are used in the Bible for other functions.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use a statement for some of the functions that statements are used for in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Statements are normally used to give **information**. All of the sentences in John 1:6-8 below are statements, and their function is to give information.

> There was a man who was sent from God, whose name was John. He came as a witness in order to testify about the light, that all might believe through him. John was not the light, but came that he might testify about the light. (John 1:6-8 ULT)

A statement can also be used as a **command** to tell someone what to do. In the examples below, the high priest used statements with the verb “will” to tell people what to do.

> He commanded them, saying, “This is what you **must** do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath **will** keep watch over the king’s house, and a third **will** be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.” (2 Kings 11:5 ULT)

A statement can also be used to give **instructions**. The speaker below was not just telling Joseph about something Joseph would do in the future; he was telling Joseph what he needed to do.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

A statement can also be used to make a **request**. The man with leprosy was not just saying what Jesus was able to do. He was also asking Jesus to heal him.

> Behold, a leper came to him and bowed before him, saying, “Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**.” (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

A statement can also be used to **perform** something. By telling Adam that the ground was cursed because of him, God actually cursed it.

> … **cursed is the ground** because of you; (Genesis 3:17b ULT)

By telling a man that his sins were forgiven, **Jesus forgave** the man’s sins.

> When Jesus saw their faith, he said to the paralyzed man, “**Son, your sins are forgiven**.” (Mark 2:5 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a sentence type** that would express that function.
(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **add a sentence type** that would express that function.
(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, **use a verb form** that would express that function.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a sentence type that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

The phrase “you will call his name Jesus” is an instruction. It can be translated using the sentence type of a normal instruction.

> She will give birth to a son. **Name him Jesus**, because he will save his people from their sins.

(2) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, add a sentence type that would express that function.

> Lord, if you are willing, **you are able to make me clean**. (Matthew 8:2 ULT)

The function of “you are able” is to make a request. In addition to the statement, a request can be added.

> Lord, you are able to make me clean. If you are willing, **please do so**.
> OR:
> Lord, if you are willing, **please heal me**. I know that you are able to do so.

(3) If the function of a statement would not be understood correctly in your language, use a verb form that would express that function.

> She will give birth to a son, and **you will call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins. (Matthew 1:21 ULT)

> She will give birth to a son, and **you must call his name Jesus**, for he will save his people from their sins.

Son, your sins are forgiven. (Mark 2:5 ULT)

> Son, I forgive your sins.
> OR:
> Son, God hereby forgives your sins.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 3:3

Distinguishing Versus Informing or Reminding

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either (1) distinguish the noun from other similar items, or (2) they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase along with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

When the phrase that modifies a noun is a relative clause (a phrase that starts with a word such as “who” or“which”), some languages use a comma to mark the difference between (1) making a distinction between similar items and (2) giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that the added phrase is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister who was very thankful**.
  - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could distinguish this sister of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the phrase is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to **her sister, who was very thankful**.
  - This same phrase can be used to give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about how Mary’s sister responded when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun both for distinguishing the noun from another similar item and also for giving more information about the noun. You (the translator) must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun only for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, translators who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples From the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items:

(These usually do not cause any problem in translation.)

> The curtain is to separate **the holy place** from **the most holy place**. (Exodus 26:33b ULT)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

> A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to **the woman who bore him**. (Proverbs 17:25 ULT)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item:

(These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.)

> … for **your righteous judgments** are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

The word "righteous" simply reminds us that God's judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgments from his unrighteous judgments, because all of his judgments are righteous.

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

The phrases "to your needy and to your poor" give further information about "your brother." They do not refer to a separate group of people.

> How can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

The phrase "who is 90 years old" is a reminder of Sarah's age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age.

> I will wipe away mankind **whom I have created** from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULT)

The phrase "whom I have created" is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)

By saying "worthless idols," David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.

Translation Strategies

If readers would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.

> I hate those who serve **worthless** idols (Psalm 31:6 ULT)
>
> > **Because idols are worthless**, I hate those who serve them.

… for your **righteous** judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39b ULT)

> … for your judgments are good **because they are righteous**.

Can Sarah, **who is 90 years old**, bear a son? (Genesis 17:17b ULT)

> Can Sarah bear a son **even when she is 90 years old**?

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

> You must surely open your hand to any of **your needy and poor brothers** in your land.

(2) Use one of your language's ways for expressing that this is just added information.

> You are my Son, **whom I love**. I am pleased with you. (Luke 3:22 ULT)
>
> > You are my Son. **I love you** and I am pleased with you.

> **Receiving my love**, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

> You must surely open your hand to your brother, **to your needy and to your poor** in your land. (Deuteronomy 15:11 ULT)

> You must surely open your hand to your brother **who is needy and poor** in your land.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:12

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not," such as the bolded parts of these words: "**un**happy," "**im**possible," and "use**less**." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> We did this **not** because we have **no** authority … (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)
>
> And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)
>
> Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent."

- In some languages, such as French and Spanish, two negative words in a clause do not cancel each other to become a positive. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a double negative creates a stronger negative statement.
- In some languages, a double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, including the languages of the Bible, a double negative can produce a stronger positive meaning than a simple positive statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is very intelligent.” In this case, the double negative is actually the figure of speech called litotes.

Biblical Greek can do all of the above. So to translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what each double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

The Greek of John 15:5 says:

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing**

We cannot reproduce this double negative in the English ULT because in English, a second negative in a clause cancels the first one. In English, and perhaps in your language, we need to choose only one of the negatives and say either:

Without me, you can do **nothing**.
or:
Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “in order to be fruitful.”

> A prophet is **not without** honor (Mark 6:4 ULT)

This means “a prophet is honored.”

> I do **not** want you to be **ignorant**. (1 Corinthians 12:1)

This means “I want you to be knowledgeable.”

Translation Strategies

If the way that the double negative is used in the Bible is natural and has the same meaning as in your language, consider using it in the same way. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.
(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)
>
> > “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

> … in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)
>
> > “… so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a negative statement, and if

it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives.

> χωρὶς ἐμοῦ **οὐ** δύνασθε ποιεῖν **οὐδέν**
>
> Without me **not** you can do **nothing** (John 15:5)

> > Without me, you can do **nothing**.
> >
> > or:
> > Without me, you **cannot** do anything.

(3) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a stronger negative statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove one of the two negatives and add a strengthening word.

> ...ἰῶτα ἓν ἢ μία κεραία **οὐ μὴ** παρέλθῃ ἀπὸ τοῦ νόμου (Matthew 5:18)
>
> ...iota one or one serif **not not** may pass away from the law

> > ...**not even** one iota or one serif may pass away from the law
> >
> > or:
> > ...**certainly no** iota or serif may pass away from the law

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 2:3

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

> He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> … like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of "Master" means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

(1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)
>
> > "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)
>
> > "He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> … like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)
>
> - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
>
> > "… like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

> Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, **"Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)
>
> > Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!** We are perishing!"

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:14

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis[^1] occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[^1]: English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (…) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.
>
> Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk —**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> > Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> > “Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

> To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> > To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinners in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

> > So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

> Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

> > Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:11

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> … they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead." It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> … where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
>
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**"
> >
> > "… where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**"
>
> But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **known a man**?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)
>
> > But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man**?"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)
>
> > "They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:15 2 Peter 3:4

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, “This has never been seen before in Israel!” (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have “Oh” and “Ah.” The word “oh” here shows the speaker’s amazement.

> **Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word “Alas” below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as “how” or “why,” even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God’s judgments are.

> **How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)
>
> > "You **are** such a worthless person!"
>
> Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word "wow" shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

> They were extremely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak." (Mark 7:37 ULT)
>
> > "They were extremely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"
>
> Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)
>
> > "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > "Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
> > "**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

> How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)
>
> > "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

> When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas,** O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)
>
> > Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:14

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.





Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

> They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

> **We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

> The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

> Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter Introduction 2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 1:19

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and

did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head.” (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, “Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep.”

> It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon,** than for you.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."
>
> It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> or:
> At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 2 Introduction 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:17

When Masculine Words Include Women

In the Bible, sometimes the words “men,” “brothers,” and “sons” refer only to men. At other times, those words include both men and women. In those places where the writer meant both men and women, you (the translator) need to translate it in a way that does not limit the meaning to men.

Description

In some languages a word that normally refers to men can also be used in a more general way to refer to both men and women. For example, the Bible sometimes says “brothers” when it refers to both brothers and sisters.

Also in some languages, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can be used in a more general way for any person if it is not important whether the person is a man or a woman. In the example below, the pronoun is “his,” but it is not limited to males.

> A wise son makes **his** father rejoice but a foolish son brings grief to **his** mother. (Proverbs 10:1 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- In some cultures words like “man,” “brother,” and “son” can only be used to refer to men. If those words are used in a translation in a more general way, people will think that what is being said does not apply to women.
- In some cultures, the masculine pronouns “he” and “him” can only refer to men. If a masculine pronoun is used, people will think that what is said does not apply to women.

Translation Principles

When a statement applies to both men and women, translate it in such a way that people will be able to understand that it applies to both.

Examples From the Bible

> Now we want you to know, **brothers**, the grace of God that has been given to the churches of Macedonia. (2 Corinthians 8:1 ULT)

This verse is addressing the believers in Corinth, not only men, but **men and women**.

> Then said Jesus to his disciples, “If anyone wants to follow me, **he** must deny **himself**, take up **his** cross, and follow me.” (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

Jesus was not speaking only of men, but of **men and women**.

Caution: Sometimes masculine words are used specifically to refer to men. Do not use words that would lead people to think that they include women. The words below are specifically about men.

> Moses said, ‘If **someone** dies, not having children, **his brother** must marry **his** wife and have children for **his brother**.’ (Matthew 22:24 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If people would understand that that masculine words like “man,” “brother,” and “he” can include women, then consider using them. Otherwise, here are some ways for translating those words when they include women.

(1) Use a noun that can be used for both men and women.
(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.
(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use nouns that can be used for both men and women.

> The wise **man** dies just like the fool dies. (Ecclesiastes 2:16b ULT)
>
> > "The wise **person** dies just like the fool dies."
> > "Wise **people** die just like fools die."

(2) Use a word that refers to men and a word that refers to women.

> For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia. (2 Corinthians 1:8) — Paul was writing this letter to both men and women.
>
> > "For we do not want you to be uninformed, **brothers and sisters**, about the troubles that happened to us in Asia."

(3) Use pronouns that can be used for both men and women.

> "If anyone wants to follow me, he must deny himself, take up his cross, and follow me." (Matthew 16:24 ULT)

English speakers can change the masculine singular pronouns, "he," "himself," and "his" to plural pronouns that do not mark gender, "they," "themselves," and "their" in order to show that it applies to all people, not just men.

> > "If **people** want to follow me, **they** must deny **themselves**, take up **their** cross, and follow me."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 3:7

Generic Noun Phrases

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

> Can **a man** walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
> So is **the man who goes in to his neighbor's wife**;
> **the one who touches her** will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28-29 ULT)

The phrases in bold above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. You (the translator) should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> The **righteous person** is kept away from trouble and it comes upon **the wicked** instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULT)

The bold phrases above do not refer to a specific person but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

> People curse **the man who refuses to sell grain**. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil

plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULT to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. If not, here are some strategies you might use.

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.
(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.
(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."
(4) Use the plural form, as in "people."
(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

> Yahweh gives favor to **a good man**, but he condemns **a man who makes evil plans**. (Proverbs 12:2 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh gives favor to **the good man**, but he condemns **the man who makes evil plans**." (Proverbs 12:2)

(2) Use the word "a" in the noun phrase.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **a man** who refuses to sell grain."

(3) Use the word "any," as in "any person" or "anyone."

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **any man** who refuses to sell grain."

(4) Use the plural form, as in "people" (or in this sentence, "men").

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **men** who refuse to sell grain"

(5) Use any other way that is natural in your language.

> People curse **the man** who refuses to sell grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULT)
>
> > "People curse **whoever** refuses to sell grain."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:2

Hendiadys

Description

In a hendiadys, a speaker uses two words that mean different things and that are connected with "and." These two words work together to express a single idea. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> … his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadyses. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Often a hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use the hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples From the Bible

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)

"A mouth" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes what comes from the mouth.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
(5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > For I will give you **wise words** …
>
> Walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> For I will give you **a mouth and wisdom** … (Luke 21:15a ULT)
>
> > for I will give you **words of wisdom**.
>
> You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you into **his own kingdom and glory**. (1 Thessalonians 2:12b ULT)
>
> > You should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)
>
> > If you are **willingly obedient** …

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> If you are willing and obedient … (Isaiah 1:19a ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly** …

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> We look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13b ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> > We look forward to receiving **what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing** of **Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:16

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **stone upon stone in you.** (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians.** (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,**
> but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed … (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> **A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches.** (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)
>
> > The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
>
> When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do,** for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)
>
> > And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
> > or:
> >
> > **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)
>
> > The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:4

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided."

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase "come under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house."

> Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say."

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

(2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)
>
> > Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

> Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)
>
> > He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

> I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)
>
> > I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> Put these words **into your ears.** (Luke 9:44a ULT)
>
> > **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

> My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)
>
> > I am crying my **eyes out**

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:18

Information Structure

Description

Different languages arrange the parts of the sentence in different ways. In English, a sentence normally has the subject first, then the verb, then the object, then other modifiers, like this: Peter painted his house yesterday.

Many other languages normally put these things in a different order such as: Painted yesterday Peter his house.

Although all languages have a normal order for parts of a sentence, this order can change depending on what information the speaker or writer considers to be the most important.

Suppose that someone is answering the question, “What did Peter paint yesterday?” The person asking the question already knows all of the information in our sentence above except for the object, “his house.” Therefore, that becomes the most important part of the information, and a person answering in English might say “His house is what Peter painted (yesterday).”

This puts the most important information first, which is normal for English. Many Other Languages would normally put the most important information last. In the flow of a text, the most important information is usually what the writer considers to be new information for the reader. In some languages the new information comes first, and in others it comes last.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Different languages arrange the parts of a sentence in different ways. If you (the translator) copy the order of the parts of a sentence from the source, it may not make sense in your language.
- Different languages put important or new information in different places in the sentence. If you keep the important or new information in the same place that it had in the source language, it may be confusing or give the wrong message in your language.

Examples From the Bible

> They all ate until they were satisfied. (Mark 6:42 ULT)

The parts of this sentence were in a different order in the original Greek source language. They were like this: And they ate all and they were satisfied.

In English, this means that the people ate everything. But the next verse says that they took up twelve baskets full of leftover pieces of food. In order for this to not be so confusing, the translators of the ULT put the parts of the sentence in the right order for English.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in an desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

In this verse, what the disciples say to Jesus puts the important information first, that he should send the crowd away. In languages that put the important information last, people would understand that the reason that they gave, being in an isolated place, is the most important part of their message to Jesus. They might then think that the disciples are afraid of the spirits in that place, and that sending the people to buy food is a way to protect them from the spirits. That is the wrong message.

> Woe to you when all men speak well of you, for their fathers treated the false prophets in the same way. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

In this verse, the most important part of the information is first, that “woe” is coming on the people for what they are doing. The reason that supports that warning comes last. This could be confusing for people who expect the important information to come last.

Translation Strategies

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information, and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Study how your language arranges the parts of a sentence, and use that order in your translation.

This is the verse in the original Greek order:

> And he went out from there and came to the hometown his, and they followed him the disciples his. (Mark 6:1)

The ULT has put this into the normal order for English:

> Now Jesus went out from there and came to his hometown, and his disciples followed him. (Mark 6:1 ULT)

(2) Study where your language puts the new or important information and rearrange the order of information so that it follows the way it is done in your language.

> And the day began to end, and the twelve came and said to him, “Send the crowd away so that, going into the surrounding villages and countryside, they may find lodging and food, because we are here in a desolate place.” (Luke 9:12 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> Now the day was about to come to an end, and the twelve came to him and said, “Because we are here in an desolate place, send the crowd away that they may go into the surrounding villages and countryside to find lodging and food.”
>
> Woe to you, when all men speak well of you, for that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets. (Luke 6:26 ULT)

If your language puts the important information last, you can change the order of the verse.

> When all men speak well of you, which is just as people's ancestors treated the false prophets, then woe to you!

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 3:13

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, "The girl I love is a red rose."

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love." This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/ listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**," "family **tree**," "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction "up" (the Image) often represents the concepts of "more" or "better" (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going **up**," "A **highly** intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going **down**," and "I am feeling very **low**."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- "Turn the heat **up**." More is spoken of as up.
- "Let us **go ahead** with our debate." Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- "You **defend** your theory well." Argument is spoken of as war.
- "A **flow** of words." Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings. (Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> And he said to them, "Go and tell that fox …" (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.

- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)
>
> > Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)
>
> > It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay.** You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)
>
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."
> > "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
>
> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)
>
> > Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)
>
> > I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
> > Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:13 2 Peter 1:13 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:17 2 Peter 3:17 2 Peter 3:18

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> … and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

> The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly

authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

(2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)
>
> > He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)
>
> > "The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David."
> > or:
> > "The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David."

> Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)
>
> > "Who warned you to flee from God's coming **punishment**?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:14 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:9

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

> **The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds. (2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

> **The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples From the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)
>
> > The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

> Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)
>
> > Blessed are **people who are meek**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:20

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
>
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
>
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does
>
> and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything… does" corresponds to "all the paths…takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

> Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
>
> exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
>
> and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

> > Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

> > Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
>
> For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

> > For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.
>
> You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)
>
> > You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you

could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

> Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
>
> > All you have done is lie to me.
>
> Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:3

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people’s relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

> You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one’s decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> > **Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you.**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word "as."

> > Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person.**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

> > He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 3:13

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**," by using **an apostrophe and the letter "s"**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my **grandfather's** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.

> The clothes of me - my clothes — The clothes that I own

- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.

> The mother of John — John's mother - the woman who gave birth to John, or the woman who cared for John

> A teacher of Israel - Israel's teacher — a person who teaches Israel

- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.

> The sickness of David - David's sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing

> the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord

- Contents — Something has something in it.

> a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.

> my head — the head that is part of my body

> the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession.** This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language. In languages that mark the difference, the expression of inalienable possession and alienable possession will be different.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

> The younger son … wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

> Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace.** (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

(1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
(2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
(3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold.** (Revelation 9:7b)
>
> > "On their heads were **gold crowns**"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink … will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)
>
> > Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink … will not lose his reward.
>
> Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath.** (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)
>
> > Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
> > or:
> > Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, "punishment of Yahweh" and "your God.")

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God.** (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)
>
> > Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.
>
> You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)
>
> > You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.
>
> You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)
>
> > You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:18

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
  - Exclusive and Inclusive “We”
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
  - Forms of You
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
  - Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The

indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19

Reflexive Pronouns

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” In English, these pronouns can also be used to emphasize the person to whom they refer. Other languages may have other ways to do both of these things.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone or something did something alone or was alone

Examples From the Bible

To show that the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence

> If **I** testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31 ULT)

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

> So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)

To show that someone did something alone, or that something was alone

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."
(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

> If I testify about **myself**, my testimony is not true. (John 5:31)
>
> > "If I **self-testify**, my testimony is not true."

> Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)
>
> > "Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**."

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

> **He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)
>
> > "**The one who** took our sickness and bore our diseases **was Jesus**."

> **Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)
>
> > "**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples."

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.

> But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)
>
> > But Jesus said this to test Philip, for, **as for him, he** knew what he was going to do.

> Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that **he himself** was about to depart soon. (Acts 25:4 ULT)
>
> > Then Festus answered that Paul was being held at Caesarea but that, **for his part, he** was about to depart soon.

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like "alone."

> When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)
>
> > "When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain."

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

> He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)
>
> > "He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in it's own place**."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:19

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> But those who stood by said, "**Are you insulting the high priest of God?**"(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.

- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above **to remind** King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order **to rebuke** him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above **to remind** his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then **rebuked** his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

> But you, why do you judge your brother? And you also, why do you despise your brother? (Romans 14:10 ULT)

Paul used these rhetorical questions **to rebuke** the Romans for doing what they should not do.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above **to show deep emotion**. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above **to show how surprised and happy she was** that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to remind** the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on **to teach them** about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question **to teach** the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden … (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above **to introduce what he was going to talk about**. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to express

surprise or other emotion? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question.
(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)
>
> > **This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed …

> **Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)
>
> > **You should not insult God's high priest!**

> **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)
>
> > **I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

> **And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)
>
> > **How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> **Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)
>
> > You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)
>
> > If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone**?

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)
>
> > **What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils**? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

> But you, **why do you judge your brother**? And you also, **why do you despise your brother**? (Romans 14:10 ULT)
>
> > Do you think it is good to judge your brother? Do you think it is good to despise your brother?

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:11

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves.** (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
>
> > See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
> — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.
>
> > See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** … (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)
>
> > See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.
>
> How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)
>
> > How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 3 Introduction 2 Peter 3:10

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> So **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?" (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> "**My soul** magnifies the Lord." (Luke 1:46b ULT)
>
> > "**I** magnify the Lord."
>
> So **the Pharisees** said to him … (Mark 2:24a ULT)
>
> > **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him …
>
> Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)
>
> > I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:14

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of "You" — Formal or Informal

Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for "you." People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT.

Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of "you" if your language does make any of these distinctions.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter Introduction 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:5

Connect — Factual Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words, "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Factual Conditions

Description

A Factual Condition is a condition that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true in the speaker's mind. In English, a sentence containing a Factual Condition can use the words "even though," "since," or "this being the case" to indicate that it is a factual condition and not a hypothetical condition.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not state something as a condition if it is certain or true. Translators from these languages may misunderstand the original languages and think that the condition is uncertain. This would lead to mistakes in their translations. Even if the translators understand that the condition is certain or true, the readers may misunderstand it. In this case, it would be best to translate it as a statement of fact rather than as a conditional statement.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)

> Elijah came near to all the people and said, "How long will you keep changing your mind? **If Yahweh is God**, follow him. But if Baal is God, then follow him." Yet the people did not answer him a word. (1 Kings 18:21 ULT)

This sentence has the same construction as a hypothetical condition. The condition is "if

Yahweh is God." If that is true, then the Israelites should worship Yahweh. But the prophet Elijah does not question whether or not Yahweh is God. In fact, he is so certain that Yahweh is God that later in the passage he pours water all over his sacrifice. He is confident that God is real and that he will burn even an offering that is completely wet. Over and over again, the prophets taught that Yahweh is God, so the people should worship him. The people did not worship Yahweh, however, even though He is God. By putting the statement or instruction into the form of a Factual Condition, Elijah is trying to get the Israelites to understand more clearly what they should do.

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)

Yahweh has said that he is a father and a master to Israel, so even though this sounds like a hypothetical condition because it begins with "if," it is not hypothetical. This verse begins with the proverb that a son honors his father. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh. The other proverb in the verse says that a servant honors his master. Everyone knows that is right. But the Israelites are not honoring Yahweh, so it seems that he is not their master. But Yahweh is the master. Yahweh uses the form of a hypothetical condition to demonstrate that the Israelites are wrong. The second part of the condition that should occur naturally is not happening, even though the conditional statement is true.

Translation Strategies

If using the form of a hypothetical condition is confusing or would make the reader think that the speaker doubts what he is saying in the first part of the sentence, then use a statement instead. Words such as "since" or "you know that …" or "it is true that …" can be helpful to make the meaning clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> "**If** Yahweh is God, worship him!" (Story 19 Frame 6 OBS)
>
> > "**It is true that** Yahweh is God, so worship him!"

> "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **If** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **If** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?" says Yahweh of hosts to you priests, who despise my name. (Malachi 1:6 ULT)
>
> > "A son honors his father, and a servant honors his master. **Since** I, then, am a father, where is my honor? **Since** I am a master, where is the reverence for me?"

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:20

Connect — Hypothetical Conditions

Conditional Relationships

Conditional connectors connect two clauses to indicate that one of them will happen when the other one happens. In English, the most common way to connect conditional clauses is with the words "if … then." Often, however, the word "then" is not stated.

Hypothetical Condition

Description

A Hypothetical Condition is a condition in which the second event (the "then" clause) will only take place if the first event (the "if" clause) takes place or is fulfilled in some way. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

It is important that translators understand whether or not something is a Hypothetical Condition so that they translate it in the correct way. For example, some of God's promises to Israel were conditional, based on whether or not Israel obeyed God. However, many of God's promises to Israel were not conditional; God would keep these promises whether or not the Israelites obeyed. It is important that you (the translator) know the difference between these two types of promises and communicate each one accurately in your own language. Also, sometimes conditions are stated in an order different than the order in which they would happen. If the target language would state the clauses in a different order, then you will need to make that adjustment.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

There are two hypothetical conditions in this frame. In both of these conditions, the first event (the "if clause") is stated after the "then" clause. If this is unnatural or confusing, the clauses can be restated in the more natural order. The first hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites obeyed God, then God would bless and protect them. The second hypothetical condition is: if the Israelites did not obey God, then God would punish them.

> If you do what is right, will you not be accepted? (Genesis 4:7a ULT)

If Cain does what is right, then he will be accepted. The only way for Cain to be accepted is by doing what is right.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them. (Acts 5:38b-39aULT)

There are two hypothetical conditions here: (1) If it is true that this plan is of men, then it will be overthrown; (2) If it is true that this plan is of God, then it cannot be overthrown.

Translation Strategies

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the order of clauses makes the hypothetical condition confusing, then change the order of the clauses.

> God promised to bless the people and protect them **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, God said that he would punish them.

(2) If it is not clear where the second event is, mark that part with a word like "then."

> God promised to bless the people and protect them, **if** they obeyed these laws. But he said he would punish them **if** they did not obey them. (Story 13 Frame 7 OBS)

> If the people obeyed these laws, **then** God promised he would bless them and protect them. But **if** they did not obey these laws, **then** God said that he would punish them.

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, you will not be able to overthrow them; (Acts 5:38b-39a ULT)

> … **if** this plan or this work is of men, **then** it will be overthrown. But **if** it is of God, **then** you will not be able to overthrow them;

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:10

Connect — Contrast Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Contrast Relationship

Description

A contrast relationship is a logical relationship in which one event or item is in contrast or opposition to another.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, many events did not happen as the people involved intended or expected them to happen. Sometimes people acted in ways that were not expected, whether good or bad. Often it was God at work, changing the events. These events were often pivotal. It is important that translators understand and communicate these contrasts. In English, contrast relationships are often indicated by the words "but," "although," "even though," "though," "yet," or "however."

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, **but** God used the evil for good! (Story 8 Frame 12 OBS)

Joseph's brothers' evil plan to sell Joseph is contrasted with God's good plan to save many people. The word "but" marks the contrast.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at the table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at the table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)

Jesus contrasts the proud way that human leaders behave with the humble way that he behaves. The contrast is marked by the word "yet."

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)

It was unexpected that the Israelites, who had been slaves in Egypt, would be able to conquer and lay claim to the promised land.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses contrast relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.
(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.
(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the contrast relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a connecting word or phrase that is more specific or more clear.

> For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Yet** I am among you as one who serves. (Luke 22:27 ULT)
>
> > For who is greater, the one who reclines at table or the one who serves? Is it not the one who reclines at table? **Unlike that person**, I am among you as one who serves.

(2) If it is more clear in your language to mark the other clause of the contrast relationship, then use a connecting word on the other clause.

> The hill country will also be yours. **Though** it is a forest, you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders, for you will drive out the Canaanites, even **though** they have chariots of iron, and even **though** they are strong. (Joshua 17:18 ULT)
>
> > The hill country will also be yours. It is a forest, **but** you will clear it and it will become yours to its farthest borders. They have chariots of iron, and they are strong, **but** you will drive out the Canaanites.

(3) If your language shows a contrast relationship in a different way, then use that way.

> {David} found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **However**, Solomon built the house for him. **But** the Most High does not live in houses made with hands. (Acts 7:46-48a ULT)
>
> > [David] found favor in the sight of God, and he asked if he might find a dwelling place for the house of Jacob. **But** it was, Solomon, **not David**, who built the house for God. **Even though Solomon built him a house**, the Most High does not live in houses made with hands.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:10

Connect — Goal (Purpose) Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Goal (or Purpose) Relationship

Description

A Goal Relationship is a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first event. In order for something to be a goal relationship, someone must do the first event with the intention that it will cause the second event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In Scripture, the goal or purpose may be stated either first or second. But in some languages, the goal or purpose must always occur in the same position (either first or second) in order for that logical relationship to be understood. You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between the two parts and communicate those accurately in your language. This may require changing the order of the two events. It may also require specific words to indicate that one is the goal or purpose of the other. Words commonly used to indicate a goal relationship in English are "in order to," "in order that" or "so that." It is important that the translator recognize the words that signal a goal relationship and translate that relationship in a natural way.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> She became angry and falsely accused Joseph **so that he was arrested and sent to prison**. (Story 8 Frame 5 OBS)

The goal or purpose of the woman's false accusation was to get Joseph arrested and sent to prison.

> Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress **in order to hide from the presence of Midian**. (Judges 6:11b ULT)

Here the prepositional phrase begins with "in order to."

> Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways **so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes**. Remember that this nation is your people. (Exodus 33:13 ULT)

Moses wants God to show him God's ways for the goal or purpose of Moses knowing God and continuing to find favor with God.

> Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her! (Ruth 2:16 ULT)

The goal or purpose of Boaz instructing the men to pull out the grain from their bundles and leave it was for Ruth to gather (glean) it.

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The purpose of going to Bethlehem was to see the thing that had happened. Here the purpose is not marked and might be misunderstood.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17b ULT)

The goal of keeping the commandments is to enter into life.

> Do not turn from it to the right or to the left **so that you may be wise** in everything in which you walk. (Joshua 1:7c ULT)

The purpose of not turning away from the instructions that Moses gave to the Israelites was so that they would be wise.

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

The purpose of the vine growers killing the heir was so they could take his inheritance. They state both events as a plan, joining them only with "and." Then the word "so" marks the reporting of the first event, but the second event (the goal or purpose) is not stated.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses Goal or Purpose relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the construction of the Goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.
(2) If the order of the statements makes the Goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the construction of the goal statement is unclear, change it to one that is more clear.

> "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **for her to glean**, and do not rebuke her!" (Ruth 2:16 ULT)
>
> > "Even be sure to pull some out from the bundles for her and leave it **so that she can glean it**, and do not rebuke her!"

> The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem, **and let us see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us." (Luke 2:15 ULT)
>
> > The shepherds said to each other, "Let us indeed go over as far as Bethlehem **so that we can see this thing that has happened**, which the Lord has made known to us."

(2) If the order of the statements makes the goal statement unclear or confusing for the reader, then change the order.

> "… if you want **to enter into life**, keep the commandments." (Matthew 19:17bULT)
>
> > "… keep the commandments if you want **to enter into life**." or: "… keep the commandments **so that you can enter into life**."

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)

(1) and (2)

> But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **and take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him. (Matt 21:38-39 ULT)
>
> > But when the vine growers saw the son, they said among themselves, 'This is the heir. Come, let us kill him **so that we can take over his inheritance**.' So they took him, threw him out of the vineyard and killed him **so that they could take over his inheritance**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:7

Connect — Reason-and-Result Relationship

Logical Relationships

Some connectors establish logical relationships between two phrases, clauses, sentences, or chunks of text.

Reason-and-Result Relationships

Description

A reason-and-result relationship is a logical relationship in which one event is the **reason** or cause for another event. The second event, then, is the **result** of the first event.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

A reason-and-result relationship can look forward — "I did Y because I wanted X to happen." But usually it is looking backward — "X happened, and so I did Y." Also, it is possible to state the reason either before or after the result. Many languages have a preferred order for the reason and the result, and it will be confusing for the reader if they are in the opposite order. Common words used to indicate a reason-and-result relationship in English are "because," "so," "therefore," and "for." Some of these words can also be used to indicate a goal relationship, so translators need to be aware of the difference between a goal relationship and a reason-and-result relationship. It is necessary for translators to understand how the two events are connected, and then communicate them clearly in their language.

If the reason and result are stated in different verses, it is still possible to put them in a different order. If you change the order of the verses, then put the verse numbers together at the beginning of the group of verses that were rearranged like this: 1-2. This is called a Verse Bridge.

Examples From OBS and the Bible

> The Jews were amazed, **because** Saul had tried to kill believers, and now he believed in Jesus! (Story 46 Frame 6 OBS)

The **reason** is the change in Saul — that he had tried to kill people who believed in Jesus, and now he himself believed in Jesus. The **result** is that the Jews were amazed. "Because" connects the two ideas and indicates that what follows it is a reason.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

The **reason** is the great storm, and the **result** is that the boat was covered with the waves. The two events are connected by "so that." Notice that the term "so that" often indicates a goal relationship, but here the relationship is reason-and-result. This is because the sea cannot think and therefore does not have a goal.

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

The **result** is that God blessed and sanctified the seventh day. The **reason** is because he rested on the seventh day from his work.

> "Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God." (Luke 6:20b ULT)

The **result** is that the poor are blessed. The **reason** is that the kingdom of God is theirs.

> But he raised up in their place their sons that Joshua circumcised, being uncircumcised, **because** they had not been circumcised on the way. (Joshua 5:7 ULT)

The **result** is that Joshua circumcised the boys and men who had been born in the wilderness. The **reason** was that they had not been circumcised while they were journeying.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses reason-and-result relationships in the same way as in the text, then use them as they are.

(1) If the order of the clauses is confusing for the reader, then change the order.

(2) If the relationship between the clauses is not clear, then use a more clear connecting word.

(3) If it is more clear to put a connecting word in the clause that does not have one, then do so.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> God blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, **because** in it he rested from all his work which he had done in his creation. (Genesis 2:3 ULT)

(1) God rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had done in his creation. **That is why** he blessed the seventh day and sanctified it.

> Blessed are the poor, **for** yours is the kingdom of God. (Luke 6:20 ULT)

(1) The kingdom of God belongs to you who are poor. **Therefore**, the poor are blessed.

(2) Blessed are the poor, **because** yours is the kingdom of God.

(3) **The reason that** the poor are blessed **is because** yours is the kingdom of God.

> Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **so that** the boat was covered with the waves. (Matthew 8:24a ULT)

(1) Behold, the boat was covered with the waves **because** a great storm arose on the sea.

(2) Behold, a great storm arose on the sea, **with the result that** the boat was covered with the waves.

(3) Behold, **because** a great storm arose on the sea, the boat was covered with the waves.

> **Since** he was not able to find out anything for certain because of the noise, he ordered that he be brought into the fortress. (Acts 21:34b ULT)

(1) The captain ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress, **because** he could not tell anything because of all the noise.

(2) **Because** the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

(3) The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, **so** he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:11 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:17 2 Peter 3:17 2 Peter 3:17

Connecting Words and Phrases

Description

As humans, we write our thoughts in phrases and sentences. We usually want to communicate a series of thoughts that are connected to each other in different ways. **Connecting words and phrases** show how these thoughts are related to each other. For example, we can show how the following thoughts are related by using the Connecting Words in bold type:

- It was raining, **so** I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, **but** I did not have an umbrella. **So** I got very wet.

Connecting words or phrases can connect phrases or clauses within a sentence. They can connect sentences to each other. They can also connect entire chunks to one another in order to show how the chunk before relates to the chunk after the connecting word. Very often, the connecting words that connect entire chunks to one another are either conjunctions or adverbs.

> It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella, so I got very wet.
>
> **Now** I must change my clothes. Then I will drink a cup of hot tea and warm myself by the fire.

In the above example, the word **now** connects the two short chunks of text, showing the relationship between them. The speaker must change his clothes, drink hot tea, and warm himself because of something that happened earlier (that is, he got wet in the rain).

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the context to help the readers understand the relationship between the thoughts. Some languages do not use connecting words as much as other languages do. They might say:

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

You (the translator) will need to use the method that is most natural and clear in the target language. But in general, using connecting words whenever possible helps the reader to understand the ideas in the Bible most clearly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You need to understand the relationship between paragraphs, between sentences, and between parts of sentences in the Bible, and how connecting words and phrases can help you to understand the relationship between the thoughts that they are connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- You need to know how to help readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in your language.

Translation Principles

- You need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

The Different Types of Connections

Listed below are different types of connections between ideas or events. These different types of connections can be indicated by using different connecting words. When we write or translate something, it is important to use the right connecting word so that these connections are clear for the reader. If you would like additional information, simply click the colored, hyperlinked word to be directed to a page containing definitions and examples for each type of connection.

- Sequential Clause — a time relationship between two events in which one happens and then the other happens.

- Simultaneous Clause — a time relationship between two or more events that occur at the same time.
- Background Clause — a time relationship in which the first clause describes a long event that is happening at the time when the beginning of the second event happens, which is described in the second clause.
- Exceptional Relationship — one clause describes a group of people or items, and the other clause excludes one or more items or people from the group.
- Hypothetical Condition — the second event will only take place if the first one takes place. Sometimes what takes place is dependent on the actions of other people.
- Factual Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain or true, so that the condition is guaranteed to happen.
- Contrary-to-Fact Condition — a connection that sounds hypothetical but is already certain that it is not true. See also: Hypothetical Statements.
- Goal Relationship — a logical relationship in which the second event is the purpose or goal of the first.
- Reason and Result Relationship — a logical relationship in which one event is the reason for the other event, the result.
- Contrast Relationship — one item is being described as different or in opposition to another.

Examples from the Bible

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT)

The word "instead" introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do and what he did do. The word "then" introduces a sequence of events. It introduces something that Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

> **Therefore,** whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

The word "therefore" links this section with the section before it, signaling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. "Therefore" usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word "and" links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word "but" contrasts what one group of people will be called in God's kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

> We place nothing as a stumbling block in front of anyone, **so that** our ministry might not be discredited. **Instead**, we commend ourselves in everything as God's servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULT)

Here the words "so that" connect what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. "Instead" contrasts what Paul does (prove by his actions that he is God's servant) with what he said he does not do (place stumbling blocks).

General Translation Strategies

See each type of Connecting Word above for specific strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).
(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be strange to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
(3) Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULT does not use one).

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” Then immediately they left the nets and followed him. (Mark 1:17-18 ULT)

They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this clause with the connecting word “so.”

> Jesus said to them, “Come follow me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.” **So**, immediately they left the nets and followed him.

(2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one, and if people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood. I did not go up to Jerusalem to those who were apostles before me. **Instead**, I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. **Then** after three years, I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days. (Galatians 1:16b-18 ULT) (Galatians 1:16-18 ULT)

Some languages might not need the words “instead” or “then” here. They might translate like this:

> I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him 15 days.

(3) Use a different connecting word.

> Therefore, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments **and** teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **But** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULT)

Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages. They might translate like this:

> **Because of that**, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. **And** whoever keeps them and teaches them, that one will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:13 2 Peter 1:15 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:10

Translating Son and Father

Door43 supports Bible translations that represent these concepts when they refer to God.

Biblical Witness

"Father" and "Son" are names that God calls himself in the Bible.

The Bible shows that God called Jesus his Son:

> After he was baptized, Jesus came up immediately from the water, and … a voice came out of the heavens saying, "**This is my beloved Son**. I am very pleased with him." (Matthew 3:16-17 ULT)

The Bible shows that Jesus called God his Father:

> Jesus … said, "I praise you **Father**, Lord of heaven and earth … no one knows the **Son** except the **Father**, and no one knows the **Father** except the **Son**." (Matthew 11:25a, 27b ULT) (See also: John 6:26-57)

Christians have found that "Father" and "Son" are the ideas that most essentially describe the eternal relationship of the First and Second Persons of the Trinity to each other. The Bible indeed refers to them in various ways, but no other terms reflect the eternal love and intimacy between these Persons, nor the interdependent eternal relationship between them.

Jesus referred to God in the following terms:

> Baptize them into **the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit**. (Matthew 28:19b ULT)

The intimate, loving relationship between the Father and the Son is eternal, just as they are eternal. The Father **loves** the Son. (See John 3:35-36; 5:19-20 ULT)

> I **love** the Father, and just as the Father commanded me, thus I do. (John 14:31 ULT)
>
> **No one knows who the Son is except the Father, and who the Father is except the Son**. (Luke 10:22b ULT)

The terms "Father" and "Son" also communicate that the Father and the Son are of the same essence; they are both eternal God.

> Jesus said, "Father, … glorify your Son so that the Son will glorify you … I glorified you on the earth … Now Father, glorify me … with the glory that **I had with you before the world was made**." (John 17:1, 4a, 5 ULT)
>
> But in these last days, {God the Father} has spoken to us through a Son, whom he appointed to be the heir of all things. Through him, he also made the universe. He is the brightness of God's glory and **the very exact representation of his being**. He holds everything together by the word of his power. (Hebrews 1:2-3a ULT)
>
> Jesus said to him, "I have been with you for so long and you still do not know me, Philip? **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father**. How can you say, 'Show us the Father'?" (John 14:9 ULT)

Human Relationships

Human fathers and sons are not perfect, but the Bible still uses those terms for the Father and Son, who are perfect.

Just as today, human father-son relationships during Bible times were never as loving or perfect as the relationship between Jesus and his Father. But this does not mean that the translator should avoid the concepts of father and son. The Scriptures use these terms to refer to God, the perfect Father and Son, as well as to sinful human fathers and sons. In referring to God as Father and Son, choose words in your language that are widely used to refer to a human "father" and "son." In this way you will communicate that God the Father and God the Son are of the same

divine essence (they are both God), just as a human father and son are of the same human essence (they are both human and share the same human characteristics).

Translation Strategies

(1) Think through all the possibilities within your language to translate the words “son” and “father.” Determine which words in your language best represent the divine “Son” and “Father.”
(2) If your language has more than one word for “son,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “only son” (or “first son” if necessary).
(3) If your language has more than one word for “father,” use the word that has the closest meaning to “birth father,” rather than “adoptive father.”

(See *God the Father* and *Son of God* pages in unfoldingWord® Translation Words for help translating “Father” and “Son.”)

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:17

Blessings

Description

Blessings are short sayings that people use to ask God to do something good for another person. In the Bible, the person saying the blessing speaks or writes directly to the person who will receive the blessing. The person who says the blessing does not directly speak to God, but it is understood that God is the one who will do the good thing mentioned. It is also understood that God hears the blessing, whether he is mentioned by name or not.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying blessings. There are many blessings in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say blessings in your language, so that people recognize them as blessings and understand what one person wants God to do for another.

Examples From the Bible

In the Bible, people often said a blessing when they met someone or when they were leaving someone or sending someone off.

In the book of Ruth, when Boaz meets his workers in the fields, he greets them with a blessing:

> Then behold, Boaz coming from Bethlehem! And he said to the reapers, “Yahweh be with you.” And they said to him, “May Yahweh bless you.” (Ruth 2:4 ULT)

Similarly, when Rebekah leaves her family, they say farewell with a blessing:

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, “Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them.” (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

In a similar way, the writers of letters in the New Testament often wrote a blessing at the

beginning of their letters as well as at the end. Here are examples from the beginning and end of Paul's second letter to Timothy:

> Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord. (2 Tim 1:2 ULT)
> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

Find out how people say blessings in your language. Collect a list of common blessings, noting the form of the verb, the use of certain words, and the words that are not used in a blessing but would normally be in a sentence. Also find out what differences there might be between blessings that people use when they are speaking to each other and when they are writing to each other.

If translating a blessing literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

1. Add a verb if that is natural in your language.
2. Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.
3. Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add a verb if that is natural in your language.

> The Lord with your spirit. The grace with you. (2 Tim 4:22, literal from the Greek)

In the Greek of this verse, there is no verb 'be.' However, in blessings in English, it is natural to use a verb. The idea that the 'grace' from God will be or remain with the person is implied in Greek.

The Lord **be** with your spirit. Grace **be** with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

(2) Mention God as the subject of a blessing if that is natural in your language.

If people expect a blessing to refer to God in your language, you might have to provide 'God' as the subject or as the source of the blessing. In Greek and Hebrew, usually God is not explicitly mentioned in the blessing, but it is implied that God is the one acting to show his kindness to the person being addressed.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

The Lord be with your spirit. **May God give** grace to you.

> They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

They blessed Rebekah, and said to her, "Our sister, may **God grant that** you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may **God empower** your descendants **to** possess the gate of those who hate them."

(3) Translate the blessing in a form that is natural and clear in your language.

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a blessing in their language.

> The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you. (2 Tim 4:22 ULT)

May the Lord be with your spirit. May God cause his grace to be with you.

May you have God's presence with you. May you experience grace from God.

> "Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and may your descendants possess the gate of those who hate them." (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

"Our sister, we pray to God that you may be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and appeal to him that your descendants may possess the gate of those who hate them."

"Our sister, by God's power you will be the mother of thousands of ten thousands, and

your descendants will possess the gate of those who hate them."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name first indeed means "king of righteousness," and then also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beer Lahai Roi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me."

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out."

> **Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)
>
> But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
(5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** … fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)
>
> > You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites.**
>
> At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)
>
> > At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, "Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you."

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> And she called his name **Moses** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him." (Exodus 2:10b ULT)
>
> > She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),** and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)
>
> > She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> … a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)
>
> > … a young man named **Paul** 1

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)
>
> > a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)
>
> > But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)
>
> > It came about in Iconium that **Paul**[1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter Introduction 2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:15

Textual Variants

Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT New Testament on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. The ULT Old Testament is based on the Westminster Leningrad Codex, which is considered to be the best representative of the ancient copies. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

> [10] See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. [11] [1]
>
> [1] Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest copies. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

> 53 [Then everyone went to his own house … 11 She said, “No one, Lord.” Jesus said, “Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more.”] [2]
>
> [2] Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

Psalm 100:3 ULT follows the Westminster Leningrad Codex. It says:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and not we**,

There are some other ancient copies that say:

> Know that Yahweh, he {is} God; he, he made us, **and we are his**,

There is an unfoldingWord® Translation Note at that place to tell the translator about this other reading and that either one is an acceptable choice.

Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include a footnote about the alternate reading such as the one that the ULT provides or one in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15] There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man.” [16] [1]
>
> [1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

> [14] He called the crowd again and said to them, “Listen to me, all of you, and understand. [15]There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. [16] If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.” [1]
>
> > [1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter Introduction 2 Peter 2:4

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

> So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)
>
> > Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> Your sins … will be white like **snow.** (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.
>
> > Your sins … will be white like **milk**.
> >
> > Your sins … will be white like **the moon**.

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."
>
> > Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
>
> > We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)
>
> > I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

> "We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)
>
> > We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> … to him who made **great lights** … (Psalm 136:7a ULT)
>
> > to him who made **the sun and the moon**

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:22 2 Peter 2:22

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day**. **Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

> - Setting includes:
> - where the story takes place
> - when the story takes place
> - who is present when the story begins
> - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son (as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces a section of background information about Jesus' age and ancestors (Luke 3:23-38). The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain**, **rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said … (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said …."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain

how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> **And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son **(as it was assumed)** of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information. A set of parentheses is also a way to mark background information. Here, "as it was assumed" gives background information to the phrase, "He was the son." People assumed that Joseph was Jesus' father, although his true father was God.

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. **Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram**. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)
>
> > "**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

> Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:8

Pronouns — When to Use Them

Description

When we talk or write, we use pronouns to refer to people or things without always having to repeat the noun or name. Usually, the first time we refer to someone in a story, we use a descriptive phrase or a name. The next time we might refer to that person with a simple noun or by name. After that we might refer to him simply with a pronoun as long as we think that our listeners will be able to understand easily to whom the pronoun refers.

> Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**. **This man** came to Jesus at night. Jesus replied and said to **him** … (John 3:1, 2a, 3a ULT)

In John 3, Nicodemus is first referred to with noun phrases and his name. Then he is referred to with the noun phrase "this man." Then he is referred to with the pronoun "him."

Each language has its rules and exceptions to this usual way of referring to people and things.

- In some languages, the first time something is referred to in a paragraph or chapter, it is referred to with a noun rather than a pronoun.
- The main character is the person whom a story is about. In some languages, after a main character is introduced in a story, he is usually referred to with a pronoun. Some languages have special pronouns that refer only to the main character.
- In some languages, marking on the verb helps people know who the subject is. (See Verbs.) In some of these languages, listeners rely on this marking to help them understand who the subject is. Speakers will use a pronoun, noun phrase, or proper name only when they want either to emphasize or to clarify who the subject is.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- If translators use a pronoun at the wrong time for their language, readers might not know about whom the writer is talking.
- If translators too frequently refer to a main character by name, listeners of some languages might not realize that the person is a main character, or they might think that there is a new character with the same name.
- If translators use pronouns, nouns, or names at the wrong time, people might think that there is some special emphasis on the person or thing to which it refers.

Examples From the Bible

The example below occurs at the beginning of a chapter. In some languages it might not be clear to whom the pronouns refer.

> Then Jesus entered into the synagogue again, and there was a man who had a withered hand. Some people watched **him** closely to see if **he** would heal **him** on the Sabbath so that they might accuse **him**. (Mark 3:1-2 ULT)

In the example below, two men are named in the first sentence. It might not be clear whom "he" in the second sentence refers to.

> Now after some days had passed, **King Agrippa** and Bernice came down to Caesarea to pay their respects to **Festus**. After **he** had been there for many days, Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul. (Acts 25:13-14)

Jesus is the main character of the book of Matthew, but in the verses below he is referred to four times by name. This may lead speakers of some languages to think that Jesus is not the main character. Or it might lead them to think that there is more than one person named Jesus in this story. Or it might lead them to think that there is some kind of emphasis on him, even though there is no emphasis.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.
(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If it would not be clear to your readers to whom or to what a pronoun refers, use a name or a noun.

> Again **he** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **him** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath. (Mark 3:1-2)
>
> > Again **Jesus** walked into the synagogue, and a man with a withered hand was there. Some Pharisees watched **Jesus** to see if **he** would heal the man on the Sabbath.

(2) If repeating a noun or name would lead people to think that a main character is not a main character, or that the writer is talking about more than one person with that name, or that there is some kind of emphasis on someone when there is no emphasis, use a pronoun instead.

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **Jesus**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **Jesus** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **Jesus** left from there and went into their synagogue. (Matthew 12:1-3,9 ULT)

This may be translated as:

> At that time **Jesus** went on the Sabbath day through the grainfields. **His** disciples were hungry and began to pluck heads of grain and eat them. But when the Pharisees saw that, they said to **him**, "See, your disciples do what is unlawful to do on the Sabbath." But **he** said to them, "Have you never read what David did, when he was hungry, and the men who were with him?" Then **he** left from there and went into their synagogue.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 1:10 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:15 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:2 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:12 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:17 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 2:22 2 Peter 2:22 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:6 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:11 2 Peter 3:12 2 Peter 3:13 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:16 2 Peter 3:16

Proverbs

Description

Proverbs are short sayings that give wise advice or teach something that is generally true about life. People enjoy proverbs because they give a lot of wisdom in few words. Proverbs in the Bible often use metaphor and parallelism. Proverbs should not be understood as absolute and unchangeable laws. Rather, proverbs offer general advice to a person about how to live his life.

> Hatred stirs up conflicts, but love covers over all offenses. (Proverbs 10:12 ULT)

Here is another example from the book of Proverbs.

> Look at the ant, you lazy person, consider her ways, and be wise. It has no commander, officer, or ruler, yet it prepares its food in the summer, and during the harvest it stores up what it will eat. (Proverbs 6:6-8 ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Each language has its own ways of saying proverbs. There are many proverbs in the Bible. They need to be translated in the way that people say proverbs in your language so that people recognize them as proverbs and understand what they teach.

Examples From the Bible

> A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
>
> and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

This means that it is better to be a good person and to have a good reputation than it is to have a lot of money.

> Like vinegar on the teeth and smoke in the eyes,
>
> so is the sluggard to those who send him. (Proverbs 10:26 ULT)

This means that a lazy person is very annoying to those who send him to do something.

> The way of Yahweh protects those who have integrity,
>
> but it is destruction for the wicked. (Proverbs 10:29 ULT)

This means that Yahweh protects people who do what is right, but he destroys those who are wicked.

Translation Strategies

If translating a proverb literally would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing that. If not, here are some options:

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.
(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.
(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.
(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Find out how people say proverbs in your language, and use one of those ways.

> A good name is to be chosen over great riches,
>
> and favor is better than silver and gold. (Proverbs 22:1 ULT)

Here are some ideas for ways that people might say a proverb in their language.

> It is better to have a good name than to have great riches,
>
> and to be favored by people than to have silver and gold.
>
> Wise people choose a good name over great riches,
>
> and favor over silver and gold.
>
> Try to have a good reputation rather than great riches.
>
> Will riches really help you?
>
> I would rather have a good reputation.

(2) If certain objects in the proverb are not known to many people in your language group, consider replacing them with objects that people know and that function in the same way in your language.

> Like **snow in summer** or rain in harvest,
>
> so a fool does not deserve honor. (Proverbs 26:1 ULT)
>
> It is not natural for **a cold wind to blow in the hot season** or for it to rain in the harvest season;
>
> And it is not natural to honor a foolish person.

(3) Substitute a proverb in your language that has the same teaching as the proverb in the Bible.

> Do not boast about tomorrow,
>
> for you do not know what a day may bring. (Proverbs 27:1a ULT)
>
> Do not count your chickens before they hatch.

(4) Give the same teaching but not in a form of a proverb.

> There is a generation that curses their father
>
> and does not bless their mother.
>
> There is a generation that is pure in their own eyes,
>
> and yet they are not washed of their filth. (Proverbs 30:11-12 ULT)
>
> People who do not respect their parents think that they are righteous,
>
> and they do not turn away from their sin.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:22

Quotations and Quote Margins

Description

When saying that someone said something, we often tell who spoke, whom they spoke to, and what they said. The information about who spoke and whom they spoke to is called the quote margin. What the person said is the quotation. (This is also called a quote.) In some languages the quote margin may come first, last, or even in between two parts of the quotation.

The quote margins are bolded below.

- **She said**, "The food is ready. Come and eat."
- "The food is ready. Come and eat," **she said**.
- "The food is ready," **she said.** "Come and eat."

Also in some languages, the quote margin may have more than one verb meaning "said."

> But his mother **answered** and **said**, "No. Rather, he will be called John." (Luke 1:60 ULT)

When writing that someone said something, some languages put the quote (what was said) in quotation marks called inverted commas (" "). Some languages use other symbols around the quotation, such as these angle quote marks (« »), or something else.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to put the quote margin where it is most clear and natural in their language.
- Translators need to decide whether they want the quote margin to have one or two verbs meaning "said."
- Translators need to decide which marks to use around the quotation.

Examples From the Bible

Quote margin before the quote

> **Then Zechariah said to the angel**, "How will I know this? For I am an old man and my wife is advanced in her days." (Luke 1:18 ULT)

> Then tax collectors also came to be baptized, and **they said to him**, "Teacher, what should we do?" (Luke 3:12 ULT)

> So **he said to them**, "Collect nothing more than what you have been ordered." (Luke 3:13 ULT)

Quote margin after the quote

> Yahweh relented concerning this. "It will not happen," **he said**. (Amos 7:3 ULT)

Quote margin between two parts of the quote

> "I will hide my face from them," **he said,** "and I will see what their end will be; for they are a perverse generation, children who are unfaithful." (Deuteronomy 32:20 ULT)

> For look, days are coming—**this is Yahweh's declaration**—when I will restore the fortunes of my people, Israel and Judah. (Jeremiah 30:3a ULT)

Translation Strategies

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.
(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning "said."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Decide where to put the quote margin.

> **He said**, “Therefore, those among you who are leaders should go down with us. If there is something wrong with the man, let them accuse him.” (Acts 25:5 ULT)
>
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us,” **he said**. “If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”
> >
> > “Therefore, those who can should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him,” **he said**.
> >
> > “Therefore, those who can,” **he said**, “should go there with us. If there is something wrong with the man, you should accuse him.”

(2) Decide whether to use one or two words meaning “said.”

> But his mother **answered and said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.” (Luke 1:60 ULT)
>
> > But his mother **replied**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
> >
> > But his mother **said**, “No. Rather, he will be called John.”
> >
> > But his mother **answered** like this. “No. Rather, he will be called John,” she **said**.

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 3:4

Appendix: Translation Words

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: euphemism)

(See also: commit, covenant, sexual immorality, faithful)

Bible References:

- Exodus 20:14
- Hosea 4:1-2
- Luke 16:18
- Matthew 5:28
- Matthew 12:39
- Revelation 2:22

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:6** “Do not commit **adultery**.”
- **28:2** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:7** “The religious leader prayed like this, ‘Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5003, H5004, G34280, G34290, G34300, G34310, G34320

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:14

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0543, G02810

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:18

angel, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
- The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: (1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." (2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
- The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: chief, head, messenger, Michael, ruler, servant)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Acts 10:3-6
- Acts 12:23
- Colossians 2:18-19
- Genesis 48:16
- Luke 2:13
- Mark 8:38
- Matthew 13:50
- Revelation 1:20
- Zechariah 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:3** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:6** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:8** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0047, H0430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G00320, G07430, G24650

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:11

apostle, apostleship

Definition:

The “apostles” were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term “apostleship” refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

- The word “apostle” means “someone who is sent out for a special purpose.” The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
- Jesus’ twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
- By God’s power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “apostle” can also be translated with a word or phrase that means “someone who is sent out” or “sent-out one” or “person who is called to go out and preach God’s message to people.”
- It is important to translate the terms “apostle” and “disciple” in different ways.
- Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: authority, disciple, James (son of Zebedee), Paul, the twelve)

Bible References:

- Jude 1:17-19
- Luke 9:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **26:10** Then Jesus chose twelve men who were called his **apostles**. The **apostles** traveled with Jesus and learned from him.
- **30:1** Jesus sent his **apostles** to preach and to teach people in many different villages.

- **38:2** Judas was one of Jesus' **apostles**. He was in charge of the **apostles'** money bag, but he loved money and often stole from the bag.
- **43:13** The disciples devoted themselves to the **apostles'** teaching, fellowship, eating together, and prayer.
- **46:8** Then a believer named Barnabas took Saul to the **apostles** and told them how Saul had preached boldly in Damascus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G06510, G06520, G24910, G53760, G55700

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 3:2

authority

Definition:

The term "authority" usually refers to a position of influence, responsibility, or rule over another person.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word "authorities" can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word "authorities" can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God's authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "authority" can also be translated as "control" or "right" or "qualifications."
- Sometimes "authority" is used with the meaning of "power."
- When "authorities" is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as "leaders" or "rulers" or "powers."
- The phrase "by his own authority" could also be translated as "with his own right to lead" or "based on his own qualifications."
- The expression, "under authority" could be translated as "responsible to obey" or "having to obey others' commands."

(See also: dominion, king, ruler, power)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:10
- Esther 9:29
- Genesis 41:35
- Jonah 3:6-7
- Luke 12:5
- Luke 20:1-2
- Mark 1:22
- Matthew 8:9

- Matthew 28:19
- Titus 3:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G08310, G14130, G18490, G18500, G20030, G27150, G52470

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:10

beloved

Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

- The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
- God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
- In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
- In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
- Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: love)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:14
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 John 4:7
- Mark 1:11
- Mark 12:6
- Revelation 20:9
- Romans 16:8
- Song of Songs 1:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G00250, G00270, G52070

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 3:1 2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:14 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:17

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: dishonor, slander)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:12-14
- Acts 6:11
- Acts 26:9-11
- James 2:5-7
- John 10:32-33
- Luke 12:10
- Mark 14:64
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 26:65
- Psalms 74:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G09870, G09880, G09890

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:12

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:4

call, called, call out, called out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out,” in this sense, mean to speak loudly.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- In some contexts the terms “call” and “call out” mean to loudly ask for help.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.

(See also: pray, cry, call to summon, call name)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:10

Christ, Messiah

Definition:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, anoint)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:1-3
- Acts 2:35
- Acts 5:40-42
- John 1:40-42
- John 3:27-28
- John 4:25
- Luke 2:10-12
- Matthew 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:7** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:8** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:1** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:5** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:6** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:9** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:7** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah**!"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:6** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G33230, G55470

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:18

condemn, condemned, condemnation

Definition:

The terms "condemn" and "condemnation" refer to judging someone for doing something wrong.

- Often the word "condemn" includes punishing that person for what they did wrong.
- Sometimes "condemn" means to falsely accuse someone or to judge someone harshly.
- The term "condemnation" refers to the act of condemning or accusing someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as "harshly judge" or "criticize falsely."
- The phrase "condemn him" could be translated as "judge that he is guilty" or "state that he must be punished for his sin."
- The term "condemnation" could be translated as "harsh judging" or "declaring to be guilty" or "punishment of guilt."

(See also: judge, punish)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:20
- Job 9:29
- John 5:24
- Luke 6:37
- Matthew 12:7
- Proverbs 17:15-16
- Psalms 34:22
- Romans 5:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6064, H7034, H7561, H8199, G01760, G08430, G26070, G26130, G26310, G26320, G26330, G29170, G29190, G29200, G52720, G60480

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:6

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **2:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **4:4** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:14

day of the Lord, day of Yahweh

Definition:

The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is used to refer to a future time when God will punish people for their sin.

- The Old Testament term "day of Yahweh" is an expression that many of the prophets use.
- The New Testament term "day of the Lord" usually refers to the day or time when the Lord Jesus will come back to judge people at the end of time.
- This final, future time of judgment and resurrection is also sometimes referred to as the "last day." This time will begin when the Lord Jesus comes back to judge sinners and will permanently establish his rule.
- The word "day" in these phrases may sometimes refer to a literal day or it may refer to a "time" or "occasion" that is longer than a day.
- Sometimes the punishment is referred to as a "pouring out of God's wrath" upon those who do not believe.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "day of Yahweh" could include "time of Yahweh" or "time when Yahweh will punish his enemies" or "time of Yahweh's wrath."
- Other ways to translate "day of the Lord" could include "time of the Lord's judgment" or "time when the Lord Jesus will return to judge people."

(See also: day, judgment day, Lord, resurrection, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 Thessalonians 5:2
- 2 Peter 3:10
- 2 Thessalonians 2:2
- Acts 2:20-21
- Philippians 1:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H3117, G22500, G29620

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3 Introduction 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:12

divine

Definition:

The term "divine" refers to anything pertaining to God.

- Some ways this term is used include "divine authority," "divine judgment," "divine nature," "divine power," and "divine glory."
- In one passage in the Bible, the term "divine" is used to describe something about a false deity.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "divine" could include "God's" or "from God" or "pertaining to God" or "characterized by God."
- For example, "divine authority" could be translated as "God's authority" or "authority that comes from God."
- The phrase "divine glory" could be translated as "God's glory" or "the glory that God has" or "glory that comes from God."
- Some translations may prefer to use a different word when describing something that pertains to a false god.

(See also: authority, false god, glory, God, judge, power)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:3-4
- 2 Peter 1:4
- Romans 1:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: G23040, G29990

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:4

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: appoint, Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:10

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”

- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”

- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: How to Translate Unknowns)

- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”

- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”

- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”

- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, reign, life)

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18
- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?”
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, “Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God’s laws.”

- **28:10** Jesus answered, “Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name’s sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:11

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:5

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."

- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 1:17 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 3:18

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** **God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15** **God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14** **God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"

- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** “Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him.”
- **28:1** “There is only one who is good, and that is **God**.”
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:12

godly, godliness, ungodly, godless, ungodliness, godlessness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms “ungodly” and “godless” describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called “ungodliness” or “godlessness.”

- The meanings of these words are very similar. However, “godless” and “godlessness” may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
- God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)

- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”

- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”

- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

- Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."

- The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."

- Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also evil, honor, obey, righteous)

Bible References:

- Job 27:10
- Proverbs 11:9
- Acts 3:12
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 1 Timothy 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:12
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- Hebrews 11:7
- 1 Peter 4:18
- Jude 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1100, H2623, H5760, H7563, G05160, G07630, G07640, G07650, G21240, G21500, G21520, G21530, G23160, G23170

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1 Introduction 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:6 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:11

God the Father, heavenly Father, Father

Definition:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

- God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
- God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
- Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

Translation Suggestions:

- In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
- The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
- Usually "Father" is capitalized when it, refers to God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: ancestor, God, heaven, Holy Spirit, Jesus, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 8:4-6
- 1 John 2:1
- 1 John 2:23
- 1 John 3:1
- Colossians 1:1-3
- Ephesians 5:18-21

- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 5:16
- Matthew 23:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard **God the Father** speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly Father** will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to heaven and said, "**Father**, thank you for hearing me."
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! **Father**, I give my spirit into your hands."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of **the Father**, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:8** "Jesus is now exalted to the right hand of **God the Father**."
- **50:10** "Then the righteous ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of **God their Father**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, G39620

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17

good, right, pleasant, better, best, goodness

Definition:

The term "good" generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is "good" could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone or "cause someone to prosper."
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: righteous, prosper, evil)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **2:4** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **8:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 3:18

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we cannot directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Deuteronomy 9:1
- Ephesians 6:9
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 7:11
- John 3:12
- John 3:27
- Matthew 5:18
- Matthew 5:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:9** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:9** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G09320, G20320, G33210, G37700, G37710, G37720

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:12 2 Peter 3:13

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often said to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”

- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6
- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:2** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:18 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:11

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Definition:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7-8
- Acts 8:17
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 1:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 51:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:8** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:1** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:3** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:3** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:8** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G00400, G41510

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:21

honor

Definition:

The terms "honor" and "to honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
- The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: dishonor, glory, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:8
- Acts 19:17
- John 4:44
- John 12:26
- Mark 6:4
- Matthew 15:6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G08200, G13910, G13920, G17840, G21510, G25700, G31700, G44110, G45860, G50910, G50920, G50930, G53990

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17

iniquity

Definition:

The term "iniquity" is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term "sin," but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word "iniquity" literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include "perversity" and "depravity," which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "iniquity" could be translated as "wickedness" or "perverse actions" or "harmful acts."
- Often, "iniquity" occurs in the same text as the word "sin" and "transgression" so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: sin, transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:13

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Definition:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, God, God the Father, high priest, kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:11
- 1 John 2:2
- 1 John 4:15
- 1 Timothy 1:2
- 2 Peter 1:2
- 2 Thessalonians 2:15
- 2 Timothy 1:10
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 5:30
- Acts 10:36
- Hebrews 9:14
- Hebrews 10:22
- Luke 24:20
- Matthew 1:21
- Matthew 4:3
- Philippians 2:5
- Philippians 2:10
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:4** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:2** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:7** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:9** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:8** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:8** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:3** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:2** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:8** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.

- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G24240, G55470

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:18

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms "judge" and "judgment" can also mean "to cause harm to" (usually because God has decided a person or nation's actions are wicked).
- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 3:7

kingdom of God, kingdom of heaven

Definition:

The terms "kingdom of God" and "kingdom of heaven" both refer to God's rule and authority over his people and over all creation.

- The Jews often used the term "heaven" to refer to God, to avoid saying his name directly. (See: metonymy)
- In the New Testament book that Matthew wrote, he referred to God's kingdom as "the kingdom of heaven," probably because he was writing primarily for a Jewish audience.
- The kingdom of God refers to God ruling people spiritually as well as ruling over the physical world.
- The Old Testament prophets said that God would send the Messiah to rule with righteousness. Jesus, the Son of God, is the Messiah who will rule over God's kingdom forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "kingdom of God" can be translated as "God's rule (as king)" or "when God reigns as king" or "God's rule over everything."
- Depending on the context, the term "kingdom of heaven" could also be translated as "God's rule from heaven as king" or "God in heaven reigning" or "heaven's reign" or "heaven ruling over everything." If it is not possible to translate this simply and clearly, the phrase "kingdom of God" could be translated instead.
- Some translators may prefer to capitalize "Heaven" to show that it refers to God. Others may include a note in the text, such as "kingdom of heaven (that is, 'kingdom of God')."
- A footnote at the bottom of the page of a printed Bible may also be used to explain the meaning of "heaven" in this expression.

(See also: God, heaven, king, kingdom, King of the Jews, reign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:5
- Acts 8:12-13
- Acts 28:23
- Colossians 4:11
- John 3:3
- Luke 7:28
- Luke 10:9
- Luke 12:31-32
- Matthew 3:2
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 5:10
- Romans 14:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) preached to them, saying, "Repent, for the **kingdom of God** is near!"
- **28:6** Then Jesus said to his disciples, "It is extremely hard for rich people to enter into the **kingdom of God**! Yes, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the **kingdom of God**."
- **29:2** Jesus said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a king who wanted to settle accounts with his servants."
- **34:1** Jesus told many other stories about the **kingdom of God**. For example, he said, "The **kingdom of God** is like a mustard seed that someone planted in his field."
- **34:3** Jesus told another story, "The **kingdom of God** is like yeast that a woman mixes into some bread dough until it spreads throughout the dough."
- **34:4** "The **kingdom of God** is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again."
- **34:5** "The **kingdom of God** is also like a perfect pearl of great value."
- **42:9** He proved to his disciples in many ways that he was alive, and he taught them about the **kingdom of God**.
- **49:5** Jesus said that the **kingdom of God** is more valuable than anything else in the world.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will preach the good news about the **kingdom of God** to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's: G09320, G23160, G37720

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:11

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “the last days” refers generally to the time which begins with the first coming of Jesus and ends with his second coming and the final day of judgement. The Bible also calls the final day of judgement “the last day.” The phrase “the latter days” is sometimes used in the Bible with the same meaning as the phrase “the last days” but other times it can refer only to a time that is after the time in which the speaker is speaking but before the second coming of Jesus. The term “the last day” refers to the day of final judgement.

- This time period of “the last days” will have an unknown duration.
- “The last day” is a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “the last days” can also be translated as “the final days” or “the end times.”
- The term “the last day” can also be translated as “the final day.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, judge, turn, world)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:3-4
- Daniel 10:14-15
- Hebrews 1:2
- Isaiah 2:2
- James 5:3
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- John 11:24-26
- Micah 4:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H3117, G20780, G22500

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:3

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."

- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.

- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."

- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.

- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.

- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1

- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind.”
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, “**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water”
- **43:9** “But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!”
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 2:1 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:11 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:15 2 Peter 3:18

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it does not benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
    - Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
    - When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
    - In the ULT, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
    - This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
    - The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
3. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.

- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God’s love can include giving up one’s own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:7
- 1 John 3:2
- 1 Thessalonians 4:10
- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 29:18
- Isaiah 56:6
- Jeremiah 2:2
- John 3:16
- Matthew 10:37
- Nehemiah 9:32-34
- Philippians 1:9
- Song of Songs 1:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:2** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:8** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:5** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:1** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:1** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:3** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:4** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:7** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:9** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0157, H0158, H0159, H0160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G00250, G00260, G53600, G53610, G53620, G53630, G53650, G53670, G53680, G53690, G53770, G53810, G53820, G53830, G53880

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 1:7 2 Peter 2:15

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” or “majestic” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: king)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- Daniel 4:36
- Isaiah 2:10
- Jude 1:25
- Micah 5:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G31680, G31720

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:17

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:6 2 Peter 3:9

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: covenant, oath, vow)

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”Â
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.

- **5:4** "Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**."
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob's twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 2:19 2 Peter 3:4 2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:13

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."

- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** “This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:7** “This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 1:21 2 Peter 2:16 2 Peter 3:2

repent, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, sin, turn)

Bible References:

- Acts 3:19-20
- Luke 3:3
- Luke 3:8
- Luke 5:32
- Luke 24:47
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 3:3
- Matthew 3:11
- Matthew 4:17
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:2** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:2** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”
- **42:8** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins.”
- **44:5** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5150, H5162, H5164, G02780, G33380, G33400, G33410

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:9

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good."
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 1:8
- Psalms 37:30
- Psalms 49:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 2:6
- Matthew 6:1
- Acts 3:13-14
- Romans 1:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- Galatians 3:7
- Colossians 3:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- 1 Peter 3:18-20
- 1 John 1:9
- 1 John 5:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **4:8** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:2** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:1** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G00930, G00940, G04580, G13410, G13420, G13430, G13440, G13450, G13460, G21180, G37160, G37170

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:13 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:15 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:13

save, saved, safe, salvation, rescue

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 80:3
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 6:3-5
- Luke 2:30
- Luke 8:36-37
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 2:21
- Romans 1:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 6:17
- Philippians 1:28
- 1 Timothy 1:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:8** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:2** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:5** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:8** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"

- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, “What must I do to be **saved**?” Paul answered, “Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**.”
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G08030, G08040, G08060, G12950, G15080, G49820, G49910, G49920, G51980

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1 Introduction 2 Peter 3:15

Savior, savior

Definition:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the Old Testament, God appointed judges to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them. These judges are sometimes called “saviors.” The Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: deliver, Jesus, save, save)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:10
- 2 Peter 2:20
- Acts 5:29-32
- Isaiah 60:15-16
- Luke 1:47
- Psalms 106:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G49900

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 1:11 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:2 2 Peter 3:18

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people do not know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who did not keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebelling against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”

- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people do not see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children.”
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people’s **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.”
- **43:11** Peter answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**.”
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 2:4 2 Peter 2:14

Son of God, the Son

Definition:

The term "Son of God" refers to Jesus, the Word of God, who came into the world as a human being. He is also often referred to as "the Son."

- The Son of God has the same nature as God the Father, and is fully God.
- God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit are all of one essence.
- Unlike human sons, the Son of God has always existed.
- In the beginning, the Son of God was active in creating the world, along with the Father and the Holy Spirit.

Because Jesus is God's Son, he loves and obeys his Father, and his Father loves him.

Translation Suggestions:

- For the term "Son of God," it is best to translate "Son" with the same word the language would naturally use to refer to a human son.
- Make sure the word used to translate "son" fits with the word used to translate "father" and that these words are the most natural ones used to express a true father-son relationship in the project language.
- Using a capital letter to begin "Son" may help show that this is talking about God.
- The phrase "the Son" is a shortened form of "the Son of God," especially when it occurs in the same context as "the Father."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Christ, ancestor, God, God the Father, Holy Spirit, Jesus, son, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:10
- Acts 9:20
- Colossians 1:17
- Galatians 2:20
- Hebrews 4:14
- John 3:18
- Luke 10:22
- Matthew 11:27
- Revelation 2:18
- Romans 8:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:5** The angel explained, "The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the power of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the **Son of God**."
- **24:9** God had told John, "The Holy Spirit will come down and rest on someone you baptize. That person is **the Son of God**."
- **31:8** The disciples were amazed. They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "Truly, you are **the Son of God**."
- **37:5** Martha answered, "Yes, Master! I believe you are the Messiah, the **Son of God**."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, **the Son**, and the Holy Spirit, and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the **Son of God**!"
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only **Son** so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0426, H0430, H1121, H1247, G23160, G52070

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17

soul, self

Definition:

The term “soul” can either refer generally to the non-physical part of a person or refer specifically to a person’s awareness of themselves as a person distinct from others.

- In the Bible, the terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- In contrast to the body, the “soul” can be spoken of as the part of a person that “relates to God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: spirit)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Acts 2:27-28
- Acts 2:41
- Genesis 49:6
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- James 1:21
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Jonah 2:7-8
- Luke 1:47
- Matthew 22:37
- Psalms 19:7
- Revelation 20:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5082, H5315, H5397, G55900

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:14

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: parallelism)

(See also: disobey, sin, trespass, iniquity)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:16

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, fruit)

Bible References:

- Acts 6:3
- Colossians 3:15-17
- Exodus 31:6
- Genesis 3:6
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 7:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:5** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:1** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.

- **23:9** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:1** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G46780, G46790, G46800, G49200, G54280, G54290, G54300

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:15

word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

- The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”

- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”

- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”

- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: prophet, true, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1
- 1 Kings 13:1
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 8:11
- John 5:39
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 12:24
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 6:7
- Ephesians 1:13
- 2 Timothy 3:16
- James 1:18
- James 2:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:7** In **God’s word** he commands his people, “Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.”
- **33:6** So Jesus explained, “The seed is the **word of God**.”
- **42:3** Then Jesus explained to them what **God’s word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:7** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in **God’s word** must be fulfilled.” Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God’s word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0565, H1697, H3068, G30560, G44870

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 3:16

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went…”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: corrupt, heaven, Rome, godly)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:15
- 1 John 4:5
- 1 John 5:5
- John 1:29
- Matthew 13:36-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G10930, G28860, G28890, G36250

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 3:6

Balaam

Definition:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balak hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balak, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: bless, Canaan, curse, donkey, Euphrates River, Jordan River, Midian, Moab, Peor)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:15

Gomorrah

Definition:

Gomorrah was a city located in a fertile valley near Sodom, where Abraham's nephew Lot chose to live.

- The exact location of Gomorrah and Sodom is unknown, but there are indications that they may have been located directly south of the Salt Sea, near the Valley of Siddim.
- There were many kings at war in the region where Sodom and Gomorrah were located.
- When Lot's family was captured in a conflict between Sodom and other cities, Abraham and his men rescued them.
- Not long after that, Sodom and Gomorrah were destroyed by God because of the wickedness of the people who lived there.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Babylon, Lot, Salt Sea, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:6
- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 14:1-2
- Genesis 18:21
- Isaiah 1:9
- Matthew 10:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6017

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:6

Lot

Definition:

Lot was Abraham's nephew.

- He was the son of Abraham's brother Haran.
- Lot traveled with Abraham to the land of Canaan and settled in the city of Sodom.
- Lot was the ancestor of the Moabites and Ammonites.
- When enemy kings attacked Sodom and captured Lot, Abraham came with several hundred men to rescue Lot and recover his belongings.
- The people living in the city of Sodom were very wicked, so God destroyed that city. But he first told Lot and his family to leave the city so that that they could escape.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Ammon, Haran, Moab, Sodom)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 12:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3876, G30910

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:7

Noah

Definition:

Noah was a man who lived over 4,000 years ago, at the time when God sent a worldwide flood to destroy all the evil people in the world. God told Noah to build a gigantic ark in which he and his family could live while the flood waters covered the earth.

- Noah was a righteous man who obeyed God in everything.
- When God told Noah how to build the gigantic ark, Noah built it exactly the way God told him to.
- Inside the ark, Noah and his family were kept safe, and later their children and grandchildren filled the earth with people again.
- Everyone born since the time of the flood is a descendant of Noah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: descendant, ark)

Bible References:

- Genesis 5:30-31
- Genesis 5:32
- Genesis 6:8
- Genesis 8:1
- Hebrews 11:7
- Matthew 24:37

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:2** But **Noah** found favor with God.
- **3:4** **Noah** obeyed God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **3:13** Two months later God said to **Noah**, "You and your family and all the animals may leave the boat now. Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth." So **Noah** and his family came out of the boat.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5146, G35750

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:5

Paul, Saul

Definition:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

- Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
- Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
- Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
- Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
- Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
- Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name “Paul.”
- Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: christian, jewish leaders, rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 1:3
- Acts 8:3
- Acts 9:26
- Acts 13:10
- Galatians 1:1
- Philemon 1:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **45:6** A young man named **Saul** agreed with the people who killed Stephen and guarded their robes while they threw stones at him.

- **46:1** **Saul** was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the believers.
- **46:2** While **Saul** was on his way to Damascus, a bright light from heaven shone all around him, and he fell to the ground. **Saul** heard someone say, "**Saul**! **Saul**! Why do you persecute me?"
- **46:5** So Ananias went to **Saul**, placed his hands on him, and said, "Jesus who appeared to you on your way here, sent me to you so that you can regain your sight and be filled with the Holy Spirit." **Saul** immediately was able to see again, and Ananias baptized him.
- **46:6** Right away, **Saul** began preaching to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:9** Barnabas and **Saul** went there (Antioch) to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the church.
- **47:1** As **Saul** traveled throughout the Roman Empire, he began to use his Roman name, "**Paul**."
- **47:14** **Paul** and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, preaching and teaching people the good news about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G39720, G45690

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:15

Peter, Simon Peter, Cephas

Definition:

Peter was one of Jesus' twelve apostles. He was an important leader of the early Church.

- Before Jesus called him to be his disciple, Peter's name was Simon.
- Later, Jesus also named him "Cephas," which means "stone" or "rock" in the Aramaic language. The name Peter also means "stone" or "rock" in the Greek language.
- God worked through Peter to heal people and to preach the good news about Jesus.
- Two books in the New Testament are letters that Peter wrote to encourage and teach fellow believers.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: disciple, apostle)

Bible References:

- Acts 8:25
- Galatians 2:6-8
- Galatians 2:12
- Luke 22:58
- Mark 3:16
- Matthew 4:18-20
- Matthew 8:14
- Matthew 14:30
- Matthew 26:33-35

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **28:9** **Peter** said to Jesus, "We have left everything and followed you. What will be our reward?"
- **29:1** One day **Peter** asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I forgive my brother when he sins against me? As many as seven times?"
- **31:5** Then **Peter** said to Jesus, "Master, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water." Jesus told **Peter**, "Come!"
- **36:1** One day, Jesus took three of his disciples, **Peter**, James, and John with him.

- **38:9** **Peter** replied, “Even if all the others abandon you, I will not!” Then Jesus said to **Peter**, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, **Peter**, that your faith will not fail. Even so, tonight, before the rooster crows, you will deny that you even know me three times.”
- **38:15** As the soldiers arrested Jesus, **Peter** pulled out his sword and cut off the ear of the servant of the high priest.
- **43:11** **Peter** answered them, “Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins.”
- **44:8** **Peter** answered them, “This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G27860, G40740, G46130

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1

Sodom

Definition:

Sodom was a city in the southern part of Canaan where Abraham’s nephew Lot lived with his wife and children.

- The land of the region surrounding Sodom was very well watered and fertile, so Lot chose to live there when he first settled in Canaan.
- The exact location of this city is not known because Sodom and the nearby city of Gomorrah were completely destroyed by God as punishment for the evil things the people there were doing.
- The most significant sin that the people of Sodom and Gomorrah were practicing was homosexuality.

(See also: Canaan, Gomorrah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:19
- Genesis 13:12
- Matthew 10:15
- Matthew 11:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5467, G46700

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:6

age, era, time

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “age” refers to a time period.

- Other words used to express an extended period of time include “era” and “season.”
- Jesus refers to “this age” as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience toward God fill the earth.
- There will be a future age when righteousness will reign in a new heaven and a new earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “age” could be translated as “era” or “time period” or “time.”
- The phrase “this present evil age” means “during this time right now when people are very evil.”
- The phrase “end of the age” (used in Jesus’ words in Matthew 28:20) means “end of this period of history” or “end of this present age” and refers to the end of this present age at Jesus’ second coming.

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2165, H6256, H6471, G21190, G21210, G22350, G25400, G35680, G41830, G42180, G44550, G51190, G55500, G55510, G56100

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:6

arrogant, presumptuous

Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:18
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Ezekiel 16:49
- Proverbs 16:5
- Psalm 56:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1346, H1347, H2102, H2103, H6277, G02120, G54500

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:18

day

Definition:

The term “day” generally refers to the time it takes for the alternating periods of light and darkness in the sky to complete one cycle (that is, 24 hours). However, in the Bible the same term is often used to refer to a shorter period of time (such as the time between sunrise and sunset) or a longer period of time that is often not specified.

- “Day” is sometimes used in contrast to “night.” In these cases, the term refers to the period of time when the sky is light.
- The term may also refer to a specific point in time, such as “today.”
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.” Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” non-figuratively.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally as “day” or “daytime” using the word in your language that refers to the part of the day when there is light.
- Other translations of “day” could include “daytime,” “time,” “season,” “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: time, judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- Acts 20:6
- Daniel 10:4
- Ezra 6:15
- Ezra 6:19
- Matthew 9:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H3118, H6242, G22500

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:12 2 Peter 3:18

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into twelve months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has twelve months. But an extra thirteenth month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is eleven days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 8:1
- Exodus 12:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G17630, G20940

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:8 2 Peter 3:8

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5

- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:12

corrupt, corrupted, corruption, incorruptibility, depraved

Definition:

The terms "corrupt" and "corruption" refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term "corrupt" literally means to be "bent" or "broken" morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "corrupt" could be translated as to "influence to do evil" or to "cause to be immoral."
- A corrupt person could be described as a person "who has become immoral" or "who practices evil."
- This term could also be translated as "bad" or "immoral" or "evil."
- The term "corruption" could be translated as "the practice of evil" or "evil" or "immorality."

(See also: evil)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 20:42-44
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 6:12
- Matthew 12:33-35
- Psalm 14:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G08610, G13110, G27040, G53510, G53560

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:4

create, created, creation, creator

Definition:

The term “create” means to make something or to cause something to be. Whatever is created is called a “creation.” God is called the “Creator” because he caused everything in the entire universe to come into existence.

- When this term is used to refer to God creating the world, it means he made it out of nothing.
- When human beings “create” something, it means they made it out of things that already existed.
- Sometimes “create” is used in a figurative way to describe something abstract, such as creating peace, or creating a pure heart in someone.
- The term “creation” can refer to the very beginning of the world when God first created everything. It can also be used to refer generally to everything that God created. Sometimes the word “creation” refers more specifically to just the people in the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may have to directly say that God created the world “out of nothing” to make sure this meaning is clear.
- The phrase, “since the creation of the world” means “since the time when God created the world.”
- A similar phrase, “at the beginning of creation” could be translated as “when God created the world at the beginning of time,” or “when the world was first created.”
- To preach the good news to “all creation” means to preach the good news to “all people everywhere on earth.”
- The phrase “Let all creation rejoice” means “Let everything that God created rejoice.”
- Depending on the context, “create” could be translated as “make” or “cause to be” or “make out of nothing.”
- The term “the Creator” could be translated as “the One who created everything” or “God, who made the whole world.”
- Phrases like “your Creator” could be translated as “God, who created you.”

(See also: God, good news, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 11:9-10
- 1 Peter 4:17-19
- Colossians 1:15
- Galatians 6:15
- Genesis 1:1
- Genesis 14:19-20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3335, H4639, H6213, H6385, H7069, G20410, G26020, G26750, G29360, G29370, G29390, G41600, G54800

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:4

creature, creation

Definition:

The term “creature” refers to all the living beings that God created, both humans and animals.

- The prophet Ezekiel described seeing “living creatures” in his vision of the glory of God. He did not know what they were, so he gave them this very general label.
- Note that the term “creation” has a different meaning since it includes everything God created, both living and nonliving things (such as land, water, and stars). The term “creature” only includes living things.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “creature” could be translated as “being” or “living being” or “created being.”
- The plural, “creatures” could be translated as “all living things” or “people and animals” or “animals” or “human beings.”

(See also: create)

Bible References:

- Daniel 4:10-12
- Ezekiel 1:9
- Joshua 10:28
- Leviticus 11:46-47
- Revelation 19:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1320, H1321, H1870, H2119, H2416, H4639, H5315, H5971, H7430, H8318, G22260, G29370, G29380

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:12

deceive, lie, deception, illusion

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true, often by telling a “lie.” The act of deceiving someone is called “lying,” “deceit,” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- To “lie” is to say something that is not true.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8
- 1 Timothy 2:14
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3-4
- Genesis 3:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 6:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G05380, G05390, G13860, G13870, G13880, G18180, G38840, G41050, G41060, G41080, G54220, G54230

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:13 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 3:17

defile, defiled, desecrate

Definition:

The terms "defile" and "be defiled" refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as "unclean" and "unholy."
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "defile" can also be translated as "cause to be unclean" or "cause to be unrighteous" or "cause to be ritually unacceptable."
- To "be defiled" could be translated as "become unclean" or "be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)" or "become ritually unacceptable."

(See also: profane, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27
- Genesis 49:4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- Mark 7:14-16
- Matthew 15:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, G28390, G28400, G33920, G34350

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:10

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:17

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, delivered

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:9

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:16

earth, land

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as "land" when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term "earth" is often paired with the term "heaven" as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated "land" when paired with the name of a people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as "the land of Canaan."
- The term "earthly" is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.

- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."

- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:5 2 Peter 3:7 2 Peter 3:10 2 Peter 3:13

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
- The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
- In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be translated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
- Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: persevere)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:11-13
- James 1:3
- James 1:12
- Luke 21:19
- Matthew 13:21
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, G04300, G09070, G15260, G20050, G20760, G25940, G33060, G47220, G52780, G52810, G52970, G53420

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6

enslave, slave, bondservant, bondage, bound, bond, bonds, young man, young men, young woman, young women

Short Title: enslave, slave, bondservant, bondage, bond

Definition:

To "enslave" someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be "enslaved" or "in bondage" means to be under the control of something or someone. A "slave" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A slave was under the direction of their master. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangeable terms.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants. Another word for "bondage" is "slavery."
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as "enslaved" to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.
- In the Bible the words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" which could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "enslave" could be translated as "cause to not be free" or "force to serve" or "put under the control of."
- The phrase "enslaved to" or "in bondage to" could be translated as "forced to be a slave of" or "forced to serve" or "put under the control of."

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term "slavery" means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.

(See also: free, righteous, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Genesis 15:13
- Jeremiah 30:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3533, H5647, G13980, G14020, G26150

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:19

envy, covet, jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms "envy" and "envious" refer to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person's admirable qualities or abilities. The term "covet" means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person's success, good fortune, possessions, or abilities.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else's property, or even someone else's spouse.
- In some contexts the terms "jealous" and "jealousy" can mean "envy."

Translation Suggestions

- When the terms "jealous" and "jealousy" refer to being wrongfully "envious" of someone the terms "envious" or "envy" could be used if the context permits.

(See also: jealous)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 13:4-7
- 1 Peter 2:1
- Exodus 20:17
- Mark 7:20-23
- Proverbs 3:31-32
- Romans 1:29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G08660, G19370, G22050, G22060, G37130, G37880, G41230, G41240, G41900, G53540, G53550, G53660

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:3 2 Peter 2:14

false prophet

Definition:

A false prophet is a person who wrongly claims that his message comes from God.

- The prophecies of false prophets are not usually fulfilled. That is, they do not come true.
- False prophets teach messages that partially or totally contradict what the Bible says.
- This term could also be translated as "person who falsely claims to be God's spokesman" or "someone who falsely claims to speak God's words."
- The New Testament teaches that in the end times there will be many false prophets who will try to deceive people into thinking that they come from God.

(See also: fulfill, prophet, true)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1-3
- 2 Peter 2:1
- Acts 13:6-8
- Luke 6:26
- Matthew 7:16
- Matthew 24:23-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: G55780

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:1

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term "feast" is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:13

flood

Definition:

The term “flood” literally refers to a large amount of water that completely covers over the land.

- This term is also used figuratively to refer to an overwhelming amount of something, especially something that happens suddenly.
- In Noah’s time, people had become so evil that God caused a worldwide flood to come over the entire surface of the earth, even covering the mountaintops. Everyone who was not in the boat with Noah drowned. All other floods cover a much smaller land area.
- This term can also be an action, as in “the land was flooded by river water.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the literal meaning of “flood” could include “an overflowing of water” or “large amounts of water.”
- The figurative comparison “like a flood” could keep the literal term, or a substitute term could be used that refers to something that has a flowing aspect to it, such as a river.
- For the expression “like a flood of water” where water is already mentioned, the word “flood” could be translated as “an overwhelming amount” or “an overflowing.”
- This term can be used as a metaphor, as in “do not let the flood sweep over me,” which means “do not let these overwhelming disasters happen to me” or “do not let me be devastated by disasters” or “don’t let your anger devastate me.” (See: Metaphor)
- The figurative expression “I flood my bed with tears” could be translated as “my tears cover my bed with water like a flood.”

(See also: ark, Noah)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:10

- Genesis 7:6-7
- Luke 6:46-48
- Matthew 7:24-25
- Matthew 7:26-27
- Matthew 24:37-39

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3999, G26270

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:5 2 Peter 3:6

foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

The terms "foreknew" and "foreknowledge" come from the verb "foreknow" which means to know something before it happens.

- God is not limited by time. He knows everything that happens in the past, present, and future.
- This word is often used in the context of God knowing already who will be saved through receiving Jesus as Savior.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "foreknew" could also be translated as "knew before" or "knew ahead of time" or "knew beforehand" or "already knew."
- The term "foreknowledge" could be translated as "knowing before" or "knowing ahead of time" or "already knowing" or "knowing in advance."

(See also: know, predestine)

Bible References:

- Romans 8:29
- Romans 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: G42670, G42680

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:17

fountain, source, spring

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:17
- Genesis 7:11
- Genesis 8:2
- Genesis 24:13
- Genesis 24:42
- James 3:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0953, H1530, H1543, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H8444, H8666, G02420, G40770

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:17

free, freed, freedom, freeman, freewill, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression to “set someone free” or to “free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression to “set free” could be translated as to “cause to be free” or to “rescue from slavery” or to “release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: bind, enslave, servant)

Bible References:

- Galatians 4:26
- Galatians 5:1
- Isaiah 61:1
- Leviticus 25:10
- Romans 6:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G04250, G05250, G05580, G06290, G06300, G08590, G13440, G14320, G16570, G16580, G16590, G18490, G30890, G39550, G45060, G54830

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:19

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term "fruit" refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is "fruitful" produces a lot of fruit. Something that is "unfruitful" does not produce fruit.

- In general, the expression "fruit of" refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the phrase "the fruit of every tree" refers to the fruit that comes from these trees.
- The expression "fruit of the land" refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.

Translation Suggestions:

- When the term "fruit" refers to what a specific plant produces, the specific term for the fruit of that plant can be used, otherwise, use a general word for the edible things that plants produce, if possible. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural "fruits" whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- When used literally, the term "fruitful" could be translated as "producing much fruit."
- The expression "fruit of the land" could also be translated as "food that the land produces" or "food crops that are growing in that region."
- When used literally, the expression "will be more fruitful" could also be translated as "will produce more fruit."

(See also: descendant, grain, grape, Holy Spirit, vine, womb)

Bible References:

- Genesis 1:11
- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:8

interpret, interpretation, interpreter

Definition:

The terms "interpret" and "interpretation" refer to understanding and explaining the meaning of something that is not clear.

- Often in the Bible these terms are used in connection with explaining the meaning of dreams or visions.
- When the king of Babylon had some confusing dreams, God helped Daniel to interpret them and to explain their meanings.
- The "interpretation" of the dream is the "explanation" of the meaning of the dream.
- In the Old Testament, God sometimes used dreams to reveal to people what would happen in the future. So the interpretations of those dreams were prophecies.
- The term "interpret" can also refer to figuring out the meaning of other things, such as figuring out what the weather will be like based on how cold or hot it is, how windy it is, and what the sky looks like.
- Ways to translate the term "interpret" could include, "figure out the meaning of" or "explain" or "give the meaning of."
- The term "interpretation" could also be translated as "explanation" or "meaning."

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, dream, prophet, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- Daniel 4:4-6
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Judges 7:15-16
- Luke 12:56

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0995, H3887, H6591, H6622, H6623, H7667, H7760, H7922, G12520, G13280, G13290, G13810, G19550, G20580, G31770, G47930

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:20

know, knew, knowledge, known, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

Used in this sense the term “know” and “knowledge” mean generally to understand something. It can also mean to be aware of a fact. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”

- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with that person. The word for knowing facts should be used when translating this sense of the word “know.”

(See also: know-relationship, law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1844, H1847, H3045, H3046, H3318, G00500, G00560, G03190, G10970, G11070, G11080, G11100, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G42670

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1 Introduction 2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:3 2 Peter 1:5 2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:8 2 Peter 1:12 2 Peter 1:14 2 Peter 1:16 2 Peter 1:20 2 Peter 2:9 2 Peter 2:20 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 2:21 2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:18

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: lampstand, life, light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Luke 8:16-18
- Matthew 5:15
- Matthew 6:22
- Matthew 25:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G29850, G30880

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:19

lawful, unlawful, not lawful, lawless, lawlessness

Definition:

The term "lawful" refers to something that is permitted to be done according to a law or other requirement. The opposite of this is "unlawful," which simply means "not lawful."

- In the Bible, something was "lawful" if it was permitted by God's moral law, or by the Law of Moses and other Jewish laws. Something that was "unlawful" was "not permitted" by those laws.
- To do something "lawfully" means to do it "properly" or "in the right way."
- Many of the things that the Jewish laws considered lawful or not lawful were not in agreement with God's laws about loving others.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "lawful" could include "permitted" or "according to God's law" or "following our laws" or "proper" or "fitting."
- The phrase "Is it lawful?" could also be translated as "Do our laws allow?" or "Is that something our laws permit?"

The terms "unlawful" and "not lawful" are used to describe actions that break a law.

- In the New Testament, the term "unlawful" is not only used to refer to breaking God's laws, but also often refers to breaking Jewish man-made laws.
- Over the years, the Jews added to the laws that God gave to them. The Jewish leaders would call something "unlawful" if it did not conform to their man-made laws.
- When Jesus and his disciples were picking grain on a Sabbath day, the Pharisees accused them of doing something "unlawful" because it was breaking the Jewish laws about not working on that day.
- When Peter stated that eating unclean foods was "unlawful" for him, he meant that if he ate those foods he would be breaking the laws God had given the Israelites about not eating certain foods.

The term "lawless" describes a person who does not obey laws or rules. When a country or group of people are in a state of "lawlessness," there is widespread disobedience, rebellion, or immorality.

- A lawless person is rebellious and does not obey God's laws.
- The apostle Paul wrote that in the last days there will be a "man of lawlessness," or a "lawless one," who will be influenced by Satan to do evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term "unlawful" should be translated using a word or expression that means "not lawful" or "lawbreaking."
- Other ways to translate "unlawful" could be "not permitted" or "not according to God's law" or "not conforming to our laws."
- The expression "against the law" has the same meaning as "unlawful."
- The term "lawless" could also be translated as "rebellious" or "disobedient" or "law-defying".
- The term "lawlessness" could be translated as "not obeying any laws" or "rebellion (against God's laws)."
- The phrase "man of lawlessness" could be translated as "man who does not obey any laws" or "man who rebels against God's laws."
- It is important to keep the concept of "law" in this term, if possible.
- Note that the term "unlawful" has a different meaning from this term.

(See also: law, law, Moses, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- Matthew 7:21-23
- Matthew 12:2
- Matthew 12:4
- Matthew 12:10
- Mark 3:4

- Luke 6:2
- Acts 2:23
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 22:25
- 2 Thessalonians 2:3
- Titus 2:14
- 1 John 3:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6530, G01110, G01130, G02660, G04580, G04590, G18320, G35450

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:7 2 Peter 2:8 2 Peter 3:17

lust, lustful, passion, desire

Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually in the context of wanting something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

- In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
- Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
- Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
- The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."

(See also: adultery, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 Timothy 2:22
- Galatians 5:16
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Genesis 39:7-9
- Matthew 5:28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0183, H0185, H0310, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H5178, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G07660, G19370, G19390, G22370, G37150, G38060

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:4 2 Peter 2:10 2 Peter 2:18 2 Peter 3:3

mind, mindful, remind, reminder, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- Luke 10:27
- Mark 6:51-52
- Matthew 21:29
- Matthew 22:37
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G12710, G13740, G33280, G35250, G35400, G35630, G49930, G55900

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:1

mock, mocker, mockery, ridicule, scoff at, laughingstock

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 3:4
- Acts 2:12-13
- Galatians 6:6-8
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Luke 22:63-65
- Mark 10:34
- Matthew 9:23-24
- Matthew 20:19
- Matthew 27:29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah.
- **39:5** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him.
- **39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”
- **40:4** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?”
- **40:5** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G15920, G17010, G17020, G17030, G23010, G26060, G34560, G55120

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:3 2 Peter 3:3

multiply, multiplied, multiplication

Definition:

The term “multiply” means to greatly increase in number. It can also mean to cause something to increase in amount, such as causing pain to multiply.

- God told animals and human beings to “multiply” and fill the earth. This was a command to reproduce many more of their own kind.
- Jesus made the bread and fish multiply in order to feed the 5,000 people. The amount of food kept increasing so that there was more than enough food to feed everyone.
- Depending on the context, this term could also be translated as “increase” or “cause to increase” or “greatly increase in number” or “become greater in number” or “become more numerous.”
- The phrase “greatly multiply your pain” could also be translated as “cause your pain to become more severe” or “cause you to experience much more pain.”
- To “multiply horses” means to “greedily keep acquiring more horses” or to “get large numbers of horses.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1
- Genesis 9:7
- Genesis 22:17
- Hosea 4:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3254, H3527, H6280, H7231, H7233, H7235, H7680, G40520, G41290

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 1:8

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms “patient” and “patience” refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God’s people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:20
- 2 Peter 3:8-9
- Hebrews 6:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 37:7
- Revelation 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0750, H0753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G04200, G04630, G19330, G31140, G31150, G31160, G52780, G52810

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 3:9 2 Peter 3:15

peace, peaceful, peacemaker

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:2 2 Peter 3:14

pig, pork, swine

Definition:

A pig is a type of four-legged, hoofed animal that is raised for meat. Its meat is called "pork." The general term for pigs and related animals is "swine."

- God told the Israelites not to eat pig meat and to consider it unclean. Jews today still view pigs as unclean and do not eat pork.
- Pigs are raised on farms to be sold to other people for their meat.
- There is a kind of swine that is not raised on farms but rather lives out in the wild; it is called a "wild boar." Wild boars have tusks and are considered to be very dangerous animals.
- Sometimes large pigs are referred to as "hogs."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:22
- Mark 5:13
- Matthew 7:6
- Matthew 8:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2386, G55190

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:22

proverb

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate "proverb" could include "wise saying" or "true word."

(See also: Solomon, true, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:32-34
- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- 2 Peter 2:22
- Luke 4:24
- Proverbs 1:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G38500, G39420

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:22

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: just, repent, righteous, sin)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- 2 Thessalonians 1:9
- Acts 4:21
- Acts 7:59-60
- Genesis 4:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:2** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:6** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:9** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G13490, G15560, G15570, G28490, G38110, G50970

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:9

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:16

receive, welcome, taken up, acceptance

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, Jesus, lord, save)

Bible References:

- 1 John 5:9
- 1 Thessalonians 1:6
- 1 Thessalonians 4:1
- Acts 8:15
- Jeremiah 32:33
- Luke 9:5

- Malachi 3:10-12
- Psalms 49:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring peace between God and people.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:6** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G03080, G03240, G03530, G03540, G05680, G05880, G06180, G11830, G12090, G15230, G16530, G19260, G28650, G29830, G30280, G33350, G33360, G35490, G38580, G38800, G43270, G43550, G43560, G46870, G52640, G55620

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:9 2 Peter 1:17

self-control, self-controlled

Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

- It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
- Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
- A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.

(See also: fruit, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:8-9
- 2 Peter 1:5-7
- 2 Timothy 3:1-4
- Galatians 5:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4623, H7307, G01920, G01930, G14660, G14670, G14680, G49970

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:6 2 Peter 1:6

servant, serve, maidservant, young man, young women

Definition:

A "servant" refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's direction. In the Bible, "servant" and "slave" are mostly interchangeable terms. The term "serve" generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- In the Bible the words "young man" or "young woman" often mean "servant" or "slave." This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. "her young women" which could be translated as "her servants" or "her slaves."

Translation Suggestions

- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his "servants."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."
- Often, when a person referred to himself as "your servant" he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: enslave, works, obey, house, lord)

Bible References:

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's for Servant: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570

Strong's for Serve: H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G12470, G12480, G13980, G14020, G14380, G19830, G20640, G22120, G23230, G29990, G30000, G30090, G43370, G43420, G47540, G50870, G52560

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:1 2 Peter 2:19

slander, slanderer, revile, insult

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
- A slanderer is also called an "informer" or a "tale-bearer."

(See also: blasphemy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:13
- 1 Timothy 3:11
- 2 Corinthians 6:8-10
- Mark 7:20-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G09870, G09880, G12280, G14260, G26360, G26370, G30590, G30600

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:2

stumble, reeling

Definition:

The term “stumble” means “almost fall” when walking or running. Usually it involves tripping over something.

- Figuratively, to “stumble” can mean to “sin” or to “falter” in believing.
- This term can also refer to faltering or showing weakness when fighting a battle or when being persecuted or punished.

Translation Suggestions

- In contexts where the term “stumble” means to physically trip over something, it should be translated with a term that means “almost fall” or “trip over.”
- This literal meaning could also be used in a figurative context, if it communicates the correct meaning in that context.
- For figurative uses where the literal meaning would not make sense in the project language, “stumble” could be translated as “sin” or “falter” or “stop believing” or “become weak,” depending on the context.
- Another way to translate this term could be, “stumble by sinning” or “stumble by not believing.”
- The phrase “made to stumble” could be translated as “caused to become weak” or “caused to falter.”

(See also: believe, persecute, sin, stumbling block)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 2:8
- Hosea 4:5
- Isaiah 31:3
- Matthew 11:4-6
- Matthew 18:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1762, H3782, H4383, H5062, H5063, H5307, H6328, H6761, H8058, G06790, G43480, G43500, G44170, G46240, G46250

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 1:10

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- 2 Thessalonians 1:3-5
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- Acts 7:11-13
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 6:6-8
- Matthew 16:21
- Psalms 22:24
- Revelation 1:9
- Romans 5:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”
- **42:3** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:7** He (Jesus) said, “It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day.”
- **44:5** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die.”
- **46:4** God said, “I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake.”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0943, H1741, H1934, H4531, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G00910, G09410, G09710, G22100, G23460, G23470, G25520, G25530, G25610, G38040, G39580, G43100, G47780, G47770, G48410, G50040

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:13

torment, tormented, tormentor

Definition:

The term “torment” refers to terrible suffering. To torment someone means to cause that person to suffer, often in a cruel way.

- Sometimes the term “torment” refers to physical pain and suffering. For example, the book of Revelation describes physical torment that worshipers of the “beast” will suffer in the end times.
- Suffering may also take the form of spiritual and emotional pain, as experienced by Job.
- The apostle John wrote in the book of Revelation that people who do not believe in Jesus as their Savior will experience eternal torment in the lake of fire.
- This term could be translated as “terrible suffering” or “cause someone to suffer greatly” or “agony.” Some translators may add “physical” or “spiritual” to make the meaning clear.

(See also: beast, everlasting, Job, Savior, spirit, suffer, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:8
- Jeremiah 30:20-22
- Lamentations 1:11-12
- Luke 8:28-29
- Revelation 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3013, G09280, G09290, G09300, G09310, G25580, G28510, G36000

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:8

tremble, shake, shaken, quake

Definition:

The term “tremble” means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning “to be very afraid.”

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to “tremble.” It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as “be afraid” or “fear God” or “shake,” depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 7:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 5:22
- Luke 8:47

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G17900, G51410, G51560, G54250

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:10

trial, proving

Definition:

The term “trial” refers to a situation in which something or someone is “tried” or tested.

- A trial can be a judicial hearing in which evidence is given to prove whether a person is innocent or guilty of wrongdoing.
- The term “trial” can also refer to difficult circumstances that a person goes through as God tests their faith. Another word for this is “a testing” or “a temptation” is one particular type of trial.
- Many people in the Bible were tested to see if they would continue to believe and obey God. They went through trials which included being beaten, imprisoned, or even killed because of their faith.

(See also: tempt, test, innocent, guilt)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:34
- Ezekiel 21:12-13
- Lamentations 3:58-61
- Proverbs 25:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0974, H4531, H4941, H7378, G01780, G13830, G29190, G39860

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:9

vain, vanity

Definition:

The terms “vain” and “vanity” describe something that is useless or extremely temporary.

- In the Old Testament, idols are sometimes described as “vain” things that are worthless and cannot do anything.
- If something is done “in vain,” it means that there the effort or action did not accomplish what was intended. The phrase “in vain” might be translated in various ways, including: “without result;” “with no result;” “for no reason;” “for no purpose,” or “with no purpose.”
- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty,” “useless,” “hopeless,” “worthless,” “meaningless,” etc.

(See also: false god, worthy)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:1-2
- 1 Samuel 25:21-22
- 2 Peter 2:18
- Isaiah 45:19
- Jeremiah 2:29-31
- Matthew 15:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1891, H1892, H2600, H7307, H7385, H7387, H7723, H8193, H8267, H8414, G09450, G15000, G27560, G27580, G27610, G31510, G31520, G31530, G31550

2 Peter References:

2 Peter 2:18